THE TRUTH-WORSHIPPERS
OF
KURDISTAN.
THE TRUTH-WORSHIPPERS
OF
KURDISTAN.
THE ISMA'ILI SOCIETY'S SERIES
OF TEXTS, TRANSLATIONS AND MONOGRAPHS.

SERIES A—demy 8-vo size.

5. Gusba'ish qâ Râba'ish, by Nasir-i Khusraw. Pers. text, ed. by Dr. Sa'id Nafisi. Bhy, 1950. Rs. 3-8/7 sh. 6 d.

SERIES B—half-royal size.


SERIES C—royal size.


SERIES D—Gujarati.

THE ISMAILI SOCIETY SERIES A No. 7

THE

TRUTH-WORSHIPPERS

of

Kurdistan.

AHL-I HAQQ TEXTS

edited in the original Persian and analysed by

W. Ivanow.

(formerly Assistant Keeper, the Asiatic Museum of the Russian Academy of Sciences, St. Petersburg.)

A-7

1953

Published for the Ismaili Society by successors of E. J. BRILL, Oude Rijn, 33a, Leiden HOLLAND.
NOTICE

The aim of the "Ismaili Society", founded in Bombay on the 16th February 1946, is the promotion of independent and critical study of all matters connected with Ismailism, that is to say, of all branches of the Ismaili movement in Islam, their literature, history, philosophy, and so forth. The Society entirely excludes from its programme any religious or political propaganda or controversy, and does not intend to vindicate the viewpoint of any particular school in Ismailism. The "Ismaili Society" propose to publish monographs on subjects connected with such studies, critical editions of the original texts of early Ismaili works, their translations, and also collections of shorter papers and notes. Works by various authors are accepted for publication on their merits, i.e. the value of their contribution to the knowledge of Ismailism. It is a consistent policy of the "Ismaili Society" to encourage free exchange of opinions and ideas so long as they are based on serious study of the subject. It may be noted that the fact of publication of any work by the "Ismaili Society" does not, by itself, imply their concurrence with, or endorsement of, the views and ideas advanced therein.
The sectarian texts, edited and analysed in this volume, considerably expand our still very meagre knowledge of the beliefs and tradition of the Ahl-i Haqq community in Persia. Their value, however, may be even greater in connection with a wider issue, namely the study of the medieval mentality of the vast rural and tribal masses in Persia, and to an extent elsewhere. Such mentality not infrequently generated powerful movements, usually with a religious colouring, but we can find very little authentic information about them from the incidental and hostile references scattered throughout general histories. As the communities concerned were almost entirely illiterate, they were unable to leave to posterity any genuine written material.

For this reason every scrap of information directly coming from this illiterate milieu well deserves the most careful study and analysis. These texts, being the product of the literary efforts of some unknown sectarians who never imagined that their work would reach the world outside the narrow limits of their community, are a genuine voice from that strange world. Moreover, certain of their features, discussed in the Introduction, make them particularly valuable, especially in connection with the study of Ismailism.

The latter, as is already known, developed a brilliant literature which, as now becomes increasingly clear, exercised a far-reaching influence upon the evolution of Islamic thought. But the ambitious goal, which the movement had set for itself, emphasised the importance of winning over the vast masses. This created a complex situation in which Fatimid philosophy and the theology of the leaders could not ignore certain vital and basic aspects of the mentality of those they led, and had to take them into consideration, thus introducing various concessions and modifications in their learned system.

No one will dispute that conceptions such as the "mentality of the masses", or "popular forms of religion" are vague ideas which may be understood differently by different people. There always have been different schools, those who regarded folklore...
elements as relics of great antiquity, and those who treated them as of comparatively recent development, a product of the "sinking" of the "cultural wealth" into the illiterate strata. Such attitude denies the creative activities of the masses, reviving the purely theological medieval view of popular religion as of ignorant perversion of orthodoxy, often tainted by obnoxious heretical errors.

We may roughly define these terms of which we will have to make use in this work. Most probably in the overwhelming majority of cases new ideas are either invented or picked up from learned sources by especially gifted individuals in various communities, and they put such ideas into circulation. But this surely does not mean that every such new idea is received with enthusiasm, and remains in general use. The strong conservatism and general distrust of the intentions of the rulers and their theologians are usually opposed to "innovations". New ideas have therefore to pass a rigid selective test, a kind of filter, of conformity with habitual outlook, economic and social usefulness, etc., which will pass a very small proportion of what is presented and is discussed. But even those ideas which pass such test are bound to undergo a still further lengthy process of adjustment, synthesisation, rolling and polishing in the course of their oral transmission and diffusion. Religious outlook which comes out of all this may be called popular religion.

It is the whole complex work of such selective, adjusting and synthesising factors which may be regarded as constituting the "creative activities" of the masses. Such activities are spontaneous and have a levelling tendency.

Popular religion differs profoundly from the theologically developed "orthodoxies". The latter are unthinkable without their literary records. In the course of their development they expand their literature, going more and more into detail. Popular religion, developed orally, by word of mouth, naturally tends to develop all possible conciseness and simplicity. Its ideal is the most simple all-comprising, ultimate, absolute, highest, and so forth, Divine Truth, Haqq or Haqiqat, which may serve as a kind of a magic key to all knowledge, obviating all religions, legal systems, learning, and which can only be revealed by God Himself.

Being unaccustomed to thinking in the terms of abstract ideas, so much cultivated by learned theology, the illiterate bearers of such revealed "Divine Truth" are compelled to use in their speculations concrete forms of myths, parables, or miracle stories. These, being in constant use, are not easily fossilized or fetishized, for a long time preserving their living freshness of symbolism which is directly felt and understood, adequately conveying the necessary ideas.

The supernatural elements which abound in our texts should not be taken as something fixed or fossilized. The ordinary member of the sect is surely no savage who would believe that a man can turn into an animal, or that beasts could talk as humans. But in his religious lore he ungrudgingly accepts this as a part of form, way of expression of religious ideas. If questioned, he takes refuge under a rationalistic attitude, explaining this as a relic of that fantastically remote antiquity which the sectarians claim for their beliefs.

Such are a few of the basic features of popular religion which stand out prominently in these texts. They are of particular importance in the study of Ismailism, — as also of Shi'ism in general,— in which their real nature, and the part they play, have been considerably obscured by the influence of learned theology and its literature.

It is impossible at this stage to think of offering a reliable account of the Ahl-i Haqq beliefs in the form of an organic and balanced religious system, or philosophy,— if such a term can be used in this case. Our knowledge of their tradition, rites and customs remains incomplete and fragmentary. In addition, it is still necessary to collect information about the social and economic background of life in various branches of the Ahl-i Haqq community. All that can be offered at present therefore is an analysis of the elements of their beliefs, and a preliminary systematization of ideas revealed in the texts edited in this volume.
Once more I have to offer my profound gratitude to the Ismaili Society for their valuable encouragement and kindness in accepting this work for publication in their series. This is particularly gratifying at such trying times when many things which used to be quite possible have now become out of the question. This book has taken a long time to prepare and print, owing to adverse circumstances. But however imperfect it may be, it is a matter of great satisfaction that here for the first time a substantial amount of Ahl-i Haqq texts has been made accessible in the original to the intending students who may take them as a starting point in their further researches.

I have also to acknowledge my gratitude to Prof. V. F. Minorsky who has kindly translated poems in Adharbayjani Turkish, published here in a "Supplement".

Bombay, August, 1953.

W. Ivanow.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

I. Introduction.
   1. The Sect 1
   2. Subdivision of the Ahl-i Haqq community 4
   3. Habitat, History, Chronology 7
   4. The Probable Origin of the Sect 11
   5. Works edited in this volume 32

II. Beliefs.
   1. Stratification 30
   2. Traces of Ancient Solar Religion 33
   3. Cosmogony 41
   4. Christian Influences 48
   5. Dervishes 57
   6. Islam and Islamism 69

III. Worship.
   1. Religious Assembly 73
   2. Sacrifice 81
   3. Initiation 89
   4. Festival 92
   5. Various Religious Observances 94

IV. The Contents of the Texts (Synopsis).
   1. Tadhkira'i A'la 99
   2. Additional Chapters to Tadhkira'i A'la 100
   3. The Principles of Haqiqat 105
   4. Extracts from Darwesh Risalas 163
      Appendix I. Miracles of Khun Atiah 172
      Appendix II. The Story of S. Iskandar 173
      Appendix III. Vispered. 181

V. Criticisms, Emendations and Corrections of the Text.
   Supplement: Turkish Poetry 184
   Verses in Turkish. By V. Minorsky 197

Index 203

Texts (Arabic Pagination).
I. INTRODUCTION.

1. The Sect.

The Ahl-i Ḥaqq, or Ahl-i Ḥaqqaṭ,—the term themselves by the Persian Nizārī Ismā'īlīs, i.e., “the religion of the Absolute Divine Truth”—form a Shi’ite sect. They are popularly known as “Ali-Ḥabīb of ‘Ali” (i.e., Abū Ṭālib). Not only Sunnite but also some Shi’ite theologians treat them as ḡilāḥ, i.e., “hyperbolists” (i.e., those who extol or venerate ‘Ali) and regard them as heretics. For this reason, the sect keeps its beliefs secret, using in its contacts with the outside world the disguise of claiming to be ḏawārûshīs.

This concealment of their connection with Shi’ism makes statistical assessment impossible, and even their approximate number remains unknown. They do not present a well-defined political unit, usually being met with in small groups scattered in many parts of Persia, as also in Russia (Caucasus), but their principal habitat is Persia and Adharbayjan.

In Persia they are closely connected with the Ḥaydārī or Ḫaydarī Kālidī, whose members in their higher degrees are initiated in both sects. The question may arise whether the Ḥaydārīs originated as a “monk” wing within the sect, similar to the ḏawārûshīs. Apparently there is some connection between the Ṣāfawīs, the Khāṣṣāts, the Ṣafarīs, the Ḥaydārīs and the Ḏawārûshīs, but the precise nature of this relationship is not clear.


2 For saving space the abbreviation AH is here everywhere used for "Ahl-i Ḥaqq".

3 Note that the Khāṣṣāṣ darwishes of Persia have nothing whatever to do with any modern political organisation of the same name in India. 

AH-1
INTRODUCTION.

The sect. 3

This explains why so little is actually known about the Ahl-i Haqq. Not only the unhelpful attitude of its members, but the complexity of its origins defied the efforts of various scholars. A detailed bibliography appears below, which (mentioned in the text) throws light on the subject in question. The first written genuine materials concerning the sect were found in 1902 by V. Minorsky, who published a Russian translation in the same year. His “Notes sur le Secte,” in the Persian S. of the Truth,” is a very important contribution to the study of the sect. Also great travelers to the East, and of the sect. Is the great traveler to the East, and of the sect. 3
Middle Ages, oriental students must act promptly, thereby saving for the treasury of human knowledge what is still available. In a study such as this errors are inevitable, but they may be corrected later by other students attracted by the subject, whereas fear to commit an error and therefore the desire to postpone the matter, may result in complete loss. The position may be easily created similar to that in the case of the study of Sufism, on which we still know nothing for certain, although much has been written during the last hundred and fifty years.

2. Subdivision of the Ahl-i Ḥaq Community.

The AH community is subdivided into a number of branches. Foreign students usually treat these as sub-sects. This is, however, erroneous, and is based on a misunderstanding. The sub-sect usually is a group in religious community which differs from the main body or other similar groups on certain important points of dogma or practice. What the AH themselves understand as firqa, is something quite different.

In fact, certain petty differences in beliefs, tradition, and (probably) practice really do exist in the AH community as a whole. But in the absence of an organisation and of codification of their beliefs they do not form the basis of subdivisions which depend on the connection with the different ṣīdāq, the families of the Sayyids officiating at the initiation ceremony.

As we shall see presently, the symbolism in the rites of initiation, which corresponds with the ḍād, oath of allegiance, in traditional Islamism, and it is often renewed, is the “handing over of one’s head,” sar supurdaq, or sar dōdān. In such a ceremony the novice apparently expresses his readiness to sacrifice his life for Lord and religion, offering his head symbolized by a nutmeg. The acceptance of the offer, with its implications, is symbolized by the Sayyid, as a representative of the Incarnation, cutting the nutmeg into pieces which are distributed among the persons who attend the ceremony. The sectarians attach an extraordinary importance to this custom. Those who can officiate at the “breaking the nut” (ṣaww ṣikarziq) must be Sayyids from a few special lines, believe to be directly descended from the incarnate Deity.

The idea which underlies this is undoubtedly the same as in Islamism, one of coming in contact, in the relation of ṣir and ṣuri with the Deity not only spiritually, but also physically, in the same way as that developed in the theory of Imamat. The best an most artistic expression of such a belief that I know is found in one of the poems of Ṣūṣir-i Khusrav, who narrates how he longed to “touch the same hand,” i.e. the hand of the Prophet, whic Saḥmān, Abū Dharr, Miqāf, and other early Shi’ite saints touch in the ceremony of swearing allegiance to the Apostle of God under a tree at Ḥudaybiyya, in the 6th year A.H. (627-8). This desire became fulfilled when he went to Egypt and saw the Fatimī Imam al-Mustanjir bi’ll-lāh.3

The term ṣīdāq (pronounced ojaq) is a Turkish word, “heart’s fire, lance”. The Yazidis apply it to their shrines and places of residence of their highest religious leaders. This use of the word is probably based on the ancient association of the fire with the hearth, which a stranger could take sitting near it in the tent of an important nomad, thus being entitled to protection in his capacity as guest.

The ṣīdāq Sayyid is obviously a representative of the Incarnate Deity because only the Sayyids believed to be descendants of Sūḥān Saḥāk are eligible for the office. An etiological myth explaining this, is narrated on pp. 77-80 of the Texts. In Mir’orsky’s text it is split into several anecdotes and mixed up with the story of Qabatas pilgrims.

Sūḥān Saḥāk is implored by his “angels” to marry and leave a successor. He agrees, and immediately after the marriage miraculously produces seven sons who in their likeness are indistinguishable from himself. However, further on some of them are called “the eldest.” These were the Haft Towāna (probably Pers. towana, mighty, powerful), the progenitors of the ṣīdāq Sayyids. When questioned (T.79) as to the attitude which the

faithful should adopt to them, Sultan Sahak says that they, his sons, should be regarded as Sayyids and Sayyid-shahids only so long as they strictly adhere to the shari'ah of Bani Ismail, i.e., the religion of the sect. Otherwise they should be neither Sayyids nor Barzanja shaykhs.  

This myth has obviously been created to circumvent the idea of the physical descent of the Sayyids from the Manifestation, although they themselves are expected to keep reliable genealogies which, perhaps, if collected and studied, may help us to reconstruct the history of the sect.

The story is interrupted (T 80) by a lacuna. The Manifestation asks, probably also in reply to the requests that he should appoint a successor: "What remains there on the spot after your tent has been struck when you move to another place?" They replied that nothing remained except for three stones which were used for the hearth, ad-dugah. Sultan Sahak then replied: "Those stones we have also taken and have put upon the head of Muhammad," the latter name obviously referring to one of his sons. This passage undoubtedly aims at explaining the term ad-dugah, which in practice has also been given a wider sense of the group or subdivision of the sect which the Westerners accept for sub-sects, and which it would be more correct to treat as affiliations. See *inwarden dar ad-dugah* al-Miri, for instance, means to be affiliated through the participation of one of the Sayyids belonging to the Mirit line, or family.  

The Sayyids of one and the same line may be scattered in many places, affiliating people of different tribes, become united around one hearth, spiritually forming a family, while often having no contact with the different hearths. It is impossible to find out whether this implies unity which should by no means be taken for granted.

What has been said here explains the reason the Atishbegis are usually looked down upon by the members of the sect, the Atishbegi Sayyids descend from Atish Bakhsh, and not from one of the miraculous suns of the family, which is a present, important and present by the authority of the sect.

Not all original lines of the Sayyids are continued; some have become extinct or extremely rare. The ad-dugah are: Miri, Khaimali, Shiah-Ibrahimi and Baha'i, with the addition to Atishbegi. When an inquisitive foreigner asks about the sect, he is asked to look at the "book" questions and formal mention one of those "revered" numbers, such as seven, balancing the number of the well-known names with ones. Therefore all the lists given by different travellers vary wildly.

Sayyids are neither priests nor teachers. Some are educated, even may incidentally attain an outstanding position, as the late Sayyid Kustam of Sahwara (near Karun) was, but far the great majority of them are in private life ordains.

I used to know in Nishapur in 1918 a certain Sayyid Ishaq, who was a *mullah* and poor old man, by profession, who, however, was held in high respect for his rare personal qualities.

3. Habitat, History, Chronology.

As has been mentioned above, the members of the sect live mostly in isolated pockets of varying size. Many say that the sector is very small, but this is still far from being exhaustive and thoroughly reliable owing to the desire for secrecy on the part of the sect.

Surely, no real history can exist in the case of a group of illiterate nomad and semi-nomad tribes which rarely come into
contact with any centres of cultural life of the country. The rise of the new sect was apparently the result of a lengthy process. It was never accompanied by any extraordinary events which could attract the attention of the outside world. It is quite paradoxical that history had so little to say about this territory which, in fact, lies almost astride one of the most important arteries of Asia, the road from Mesopotamia to the East, the Khanqin-Kermanshah-Hamadan route. But we have its replica on the other side of the Iranian plateau, on the road from Kabul to the Indian plains. I mean Kafiristan which till recently remained an inaccessible and mysterious country, completely isolated from the rest of the world.

In their religious ideas concerning their history the AH begin with the “time before time was created”, and have an interesting cosmogony. After the creation, they directly pass to the period of the Prophet and ‘Ali. Shi’ite legends which cluster around it do not appear to be original. Just as in the system of the Druzes, the ‘Ali himself remains a shadowy figure. Then come five of his successive incarnations (dāvûn, Turkish term, or ānâm, Pers., both meaning dæres): Shâh Khûshin, Sultan Şâhûk, Qrmîzî, Muhammad Bek and Atish Bek. Despite many inquiries I still have no definite and decisive information as to whether all AH communities accept this version, or have their own, differing from this. In any case, even amongst the Atish-begis admit that this list is incomplete, and that there were also other dāvûns: two names are usually mentioned, one being a predecessor of Shâh Khûshin, a certain Sayyid Shihâb-ud-dîn, and the other an Incarnation between the former and Sultan Şâhûk—Bâ’ûs, Báhûs, sometimes changed into Nâhûs. At the same time some well-informed sectarians admit that “incarnations of the Deity were many, and we cannot remember the names of all of them.” In our texts (T. 73) this idea is expressed in the form of a prophecy: “They (i.e. Incarnations) have come and will be coming until the day when the Mahdi manifests himself”. This may permit us with some degree of probability to accept the Seven Incarnations as a merely token or symbolic number.

It is noteworthy that “Şâhûk” can only be an Armenian form of the Islamic name Ishâq, Isaac. Similarly, Bâhû is presumably Armenian name Bolus, Paul. Benyamin is also a name of Benjamí, and we may add Nûy, i.e. Nûh, Noah, of the same origin. Thus we apparently have to do with a comparatively fresh traces of an Armenian, perhaps specifically Paulician phase in the evolution of the sect, of which the AH sect sprang. We shall return to the history dealing with the Christian elements in the AH faith, and some other aspects of its relation with the “⼈权式” community.

The latter sometimes offers allusions to which the sect is narrated in the following manner: In the land of Hamadan, that of Shâh ibn Tahir, there are many stories with that uncertain, and on. Besides, beliefs, Báhûs is a titular name of a sect, and the spread of that of Arûf of lašîq, official name of Hasdî, as not in Arabic.

1 It seems doubtful whether the form Şâhûk deviates from Ishâq without Armenian influence. The fact, however, is that the “Sultan” was Ishâq. On some occasions it is written Şâhûk (T. 119) and Ishâq (T. 163). There is apparently no connection of this name with Ishâq as is the case with Bâhûs, Bâhûs, the “next best” becomes Easter (Christian holiday) and which is to be used as a name. It may be noted that the Nestorian Christians, as they are called, were apparently always in the Kuras. As E. B. Soane mentions (“Grammar of the Khi Language”, L. 1913, p. 5), the Balaki tribe in the district among the Kuras and Zaza, speak a language which is “Jash, Armenian and Arabic”.

obviously the Armenian form of the above, and also of the word here with obvious error. The latter sometimes offers allusions to which the sect is narrated in the following manner: In the land of Hamadan, that of Shâh ibn Tahir, there are many stories with that uncertain, and on. Besides, beliefs, Báhûs is a titular name of a sect, and the spread of that of Arûf of lašîq, official name of Hasdî, as not in Arabic.
INTRODUCTION.

('Arif?) and his beloved, which is fairly ubiquitous in rural Persia. Although both, ours and Minorsky's texts come from the same locality, Warāmin, there are considerable differences in poetical portions.

In the present text there is yet another quasi-datable story (T 87-92) which is not found in Minorsky's text. In it, Shaykh Šafi (i.e. Šafiiyuddīn) Ardabili (the saintly ancestor of the Safawids, d. 735/1334) is sent by his spiritual guide, Shaykh Zāhid Gilānī (d. ca. 700/1301) to Sultan Šahāk for investiture. The events should therefore have belonged to the end of the viii/xiii c., thus leaving a gap between Sultan Šahāk and the next incarnation, Širmizi, of over four centuries, which is surely absurd.

We can only try to reconstruct at least the bare and approximate chronology of the latest Incarnations. A chance to do this is offered by the fact that sectarian tradition is quite positive in associating the period of Āṭish Bek with that of Nādir Šah (reigned 1148-1166/1736-1747, but was the de facto ruler of Persia prior to that date), cf. MinII, 41-42. In 1948 I found some fragments relating to speeches and miracles of Āṭish Bek, associated with definite dates: 1080/1669, 1082/1671, 1083/1672, and finally 1114/1702-3, apparently the date of Āṭish Bek's "disappearance".

Taking those dates as a rough guide, we may take it that Āṭish Bek's period covered the last forty years or so of the x/xvi c. and the beginning of the next. Thus that of his father, Muhammad Bek, must have covered the decades in the middle of that century, and Širmizi's those at the beginning of it. We do not know how long was the "interregnum" between the death of Sultan Šahāk and Širmizi, but tradition treats it as a short one, "seven years". Thus most probably the period of Sultan Šahāk occupied the second half of the x/xvi c. This tallies excellently with MinIII, 13, which contains information cited from C. J. Edmonds, concerning Shaykh Mahmūd Barzani (who after the first world war claimed to be the king of Kurdistan) who traced his descent to the brother of Sultan Šahāk in the twelfth generation. Minorsky quotes this with an obvious feeling of incredulity which seems to me perfectly unjustified. Allowing the usual per generation, we get exactly the second half of the x/xvi c. The setting of the stories connected with him, and other considerations, make this highly acceptable.

The information in this text concerning the descendants of Āṭish Bek (T 131) and that collected by Minorsky (see MinII, 41-42), from sources quite independent from those of our text, tallies perfectly. Āṭish Bek in a "prophecy", mentions the names of his descendants up to the date of our manuscript, 911/1874, and they are exactly the same as in Minorsky's material: Imām-Quli, Sarkhūsh, Sultan Mahmūd, Mirzā 'Abbās Bek (he died in 1833), Mirzā Nizām, Aqa Sāda, and Mirzā (he is the last in our ms., as he was obviously still living in 1291/1874). MinII, 41-42, adds two more names: 'Āli, 'Alī-Āghā Mirzā (or AqāBahāsh, d. 1917) and Muhammad Ḥasan Mirzā who probably died in recent years.

4. The Probable Origin of the Sect.

In the absence of historical information we have nothing except the Ahl tradition, as available in our texts, from which to form an idea concerning the origin of the sect, against the background of the general history of the period. There are certain elements which are so prominent in all the stories that we can find no reason for treating them as merely incidental. The basic elements found in the part played by the darwish, obviously not pious and learned Sufis, but popular mendicant vagrants, the qalandars. The earliest Incarnation remembered by the tradition, Shāh Khāshā, produces himself (T 4-5):

Āzvāl qalandar Mā ẖāsim, ākhir ġaw Mā ẖāsim.
Bolt, ṭāḥ-i qalandarvād bā bā; na-nāmā muẖāsin.
This means: "I was the first qalandar, and I was the last; verily, I shall not reveal the qalandars' path to any one. The implications of this quotation are not clear, but this does not mean that the darwish and qalandars form the leading group of The
head, that is the Incarnation, invariably appears as a darwish pîr surrounded by qalandars.

Shâh Khûshin's story clearly falls into three independent parts, and is most probably the result of a synthesis of three different phases through which the early development of the sect had passed. The first aspect of the saint is that of a hero born by a virgin daughter of a tribal chieftain who miraculously conceived from the sun. The second phase shows him moving at the head of an immense multitude, called (T 45, 47) his troops (qâshân), not murîd. It is his nuqad-nuqada, nine-hundred times nine-hundred (810,000), cf. T 115 and also Minl. 50. A strange term is applied to this multitude, maqâm, as in the expressions: maqâm-i Shâh Khûshin hâdîr gardâd'...vol nuqad-nuqada maqâm-i xârî girtistâd.... This multitude obviously has some religious significance. Possibly they represent saints of some kind and it is owing to this that the maqâm re-appears in the apotheoses of all Incarnations.

The third aspect of Shâh Khûshin appears in the stories of his wanderings over Luristan and Kurdistan in which he contests various (obviously local) pîrs who are summarily described as pretenders, da'wâ-l-khârî. They are reduced to obedience by the display of extraordinary magical powers by the Incarnation. Such expeditions and contests seem to have nothing to do with any disputations over matters of dogma, but are simply acts of proof of Shâh Khûshin's superior authority. We may suspect that popular memory dressed them up in the form of magical contests chiefly because in Persian folklore the qalandar very often appears as a bearer of great magical powers which he uses for by no means philanthropical and religious purposes.

The next Incarnation, Sultân Şâhâk, appears as the real founder of the sect, the reformer who revives the forgotten or neglected ancient laws, dastîr-i sabiq zoa qâshîn. He is also a darwish pîr, but not of the qalandar, wandering, but of a "sedentary" type, the pîr of Shâbîn and Pardîvar, two villages on the Sirvân rivulet. All his associates are darwishes. But whereas under Shâh Khûshin little attention was paid to these, and even the
The latest map of the "Cradle of the Abi-i Haqq Sect" and its tribal area in Persian Kurdistan.
(From the "Farhang-i Jughratiya-ve Iram", vol. I, N.S. H. 1330.
Slightly enlarged.)
names of these incarnate "angels" have not been preserved, they here receive great importance. What is unique, the religion of the sect takes the name from one of the "angels," being called šajř-i Bāyānīn, the covenant of Bāyānīn. His colleague, Dāwūd, appears as endowed with almost divine powers. Mythology describes Bāyānīn as a re-incarnation of the angel ḫabrāl (Gabriel), with whom the Creator, before the creation, entered into the covenant of pr-i mīrdā, i.e., relations as between the teacher and disciple, the position of the latter being occupied by the Deity. Such paradoxical situations are based on the idea that while the Deity as the mīrdā can carry out any order of the spiritual guide, the creature cannot carry out all the commands of the Deity. This is an interesting revival of the ancient speculations of Philo Judaeus, later revived by Origen.

What all this in all probability implied is the possibility that the darwishes, led by the pir Bāyānīn managed the whole show, while the Incarnation was merely a puppet in their hands. Moreover, it seems that a serious struggle was going on between the Incarnation and the darwishes. On pp. 84-87 we read the significant story (not found in Minorsky's text) of how the pir Bāyānīn, a re-incarnation of ḫabrāl and Salmān, the symbol of the ideal devotion and obedience to God, committed the morally Satanic sin of "thinking too much of his own importance." He was exiled, but later the dispute was settled.

Apparently the struggle continued throughout the period of the next Incarnations, with the qalandars losing ground.

---

1. In the stories of Shāh Khūshnīn his usual associate, who is called an "angel," although he is a re-incarnation of Salmān (Fārsī) (T 2), Kīkā Rūdā. Rūdā means a clock, mantle, therefore it seems to be a synonym rather than a name. His penname was Rūdā (T 36). Various schemes of the "angels" during the periods of different Incarnations include such names as Bābā Buzurg or Kurī Faqlī. The former, probably a pir or saint of Lūstān, is merely mentioned as a dā'ūr-i kurī who expressed submissions. The same applies to the "son of the lawyer," Kurī Faqlī (i.e. Faqlī) the gorg of Rīshāb. Their names were forced into the scheme simply because no other contemporaries of note could have been remembered. The names of the "angels" of different Incarnations given in Minlī, 64 and Minlīl, are pure "improvisations" of some resourceful members of the sect.
have seen, no “angels” were mentioned under Shāh Khūshnūd. Under Sūltān Ṣafád they acquire immense importance. They retain it at the beginning of the period of the next Incarnation, Qīrman, although “falling into another dress, dā'ūs” (T. 94). But apparently the Incarnations won, the next one being the ordinary son of Qīrman, who was succeeded, in his turn, by his own son. Under Qīrman their part becomes rather vague, under Muḥammad Bek they are merely referred in a general way as ḥār-i chahār māshāk, and under Ṣāḥib Bek their offices become distributed in a simple family arrangement. But the end of the darāwīsh influence meant the death of the religious legend, the miracle which they had worked. Although in our texts (p. 131) Ṣāḥib Bek apparently claimed the position of successive Incarnations for his descendants, “they are we, and we are they”, his descendants were, in fact, not regarded as the equals of their forefather and his predecessors.

This at least is the impression produced by the sectarian tradition with regard to the course of events in the evolution of the community. This cannot be a total fiction, a combination of “wandering motives”. Recent studies of Persian Iṣmāʿīlism, however, offer excellent clues to the strange course of events in the development of the Aḥ community. There is a striking similarity between this story and that of the Indian Nizārī community, the Ḥojas, and also, to a lesser extent, of the original Iṣmāʿīlī communities in Persia of about that period to which the final foundation of the Aḥ sect belongs. As the subject is new, it will be necessary to mention certain historical facts without which the matter cannot be made clear.

The Mongol invasion of Persia and adjacent countries attracted much attention, but till recent times little interest has been evoked by the material which various historians preserved as regards its effect on the rural population. The best informed and trustworthy historian of the period, Rashidūd-dīn, the author of the great Žamān-i-tawārīkh, has left us in his book a vivid

---

8 Unfortunately, all that is accessible to me here is the Russian translation of the Section on Hulagids of Persia, “Raschid-ad-din. Collection of Annals”. Transl. by A. C. Atkinson. Vol III. Moscow-Leningrad, 1946.

---

14 INTRODUCTION.

15 HISTORY.
data, as shown by the dialects which are spoken in the Caspian belt, indicate a complex mixture of elements derived from several groups of dialects spoken in the interior much farther South. Local conditions are such as to suggest that a similar intermixture would hardly have been possible in the normal course of events.

In the East the wave of the refugees was probably not so great, but the distribution of languages again indicates the spread of Persian from the interior. A quite considerable proportion of Persian speaking groups amongst the Hazara in Afghanistan, even amongst the Mongoloid Berbers, and the existence of such pockets as Parachi and Ormuri not so far from Kabul, may, perhaps, be traced to this upheaval.

In the much more thickly populated West, in its Northern section, as is well attested by history, not only did a great mass of Turkomans and other Turkish nomads pass on their way from Central Asia to Asia Minor, but also almost all the Persian population of Adharbayjan fled. In the South, as we know from Rashidu'd-din, the provinces of Yazd and partly that of Isfahan were almost completely depopulated. These people most probably were exactly those who “floated” the old Gurani Kurdish tribe, entirely diluting and transforming their language which now shows so many affinities with the Central group of Persian dialects. Further NW a similar process, probably with the influx of the Adharast speaking Adharbayjani, has produced the Zaza dialect. Its bearers call themselves Dimla which Prof. Minorsky identified as a derivative from Daylam. It would be difficult, however, to believe that it was merely a small number of the inhabitants of Daylam, in the Elburz range who were the ancestors of the present Zaza. Perhaps it would be better to regard that Dimla comes from Daylam in the sense of a subject of the Daylamite, i.e., of the Buyid state, or states. The term Daylam was under that dynasty, and even much later, used in the sense of “Persian,” by nationality, and Shi'ite by religion, as opposed to Atrak, Turks, meaning the

7 Rashidu'd-din, op. cit., pp. 263-270.
8 E.I., vol. 5, art. Kordi.

Sunnite, Saljugs and their supporters. It is quite possible that continuous infiltration of such agricultural labour was received without much opposition in the tribal area, and gradually settled down, to a large extent mixing with the Kurdish population. The mechanism of tribal economy could easily facilitate this.

Still further South, the Bakhtyari and their confederates still have a clear memory of their immigration from Fars to India.

It is tempting to connect the beginnings of the Ahmadiyya movement with this cataclysm. On the Eastern side the picture is fairly clear. In Sind Ismaili propaganda started during the ii/ix century, and the religion achieved great success, with the province forming a part of the Fatimid empire until the Ghurid invasion of 571/1175. The Mongol catastrophe sent a wave of Ismaili refugees, probably led by darwishes, into the area, and this revived the Ismaili sect which was living underground. This produced the new sect (Tariqa-i Haqi) which later developed into the Khadijite community under the guidance of some outstanding pir. As we have seen, the foundation of the AH sect was undoubtedly the work of darwishes who appeared in Khwājā 900 in unprecedented numbers as reflected in the AH myth.

9 The term Daylam, pl. Daulans, with the implications of Shi'ite, as opposed to the Turk, Atrak, not by nationality, but by the pro-Saljuq party, and Sunnite by religion, is much used in the study of Ismaili work, the autobiography of the outstanding Faqih and author, Sayyid-nâ al-Mu'iyyad fi'd-din Hâfiz-i Gilânî bin Mu'âsh Shâh-Shâhî (d. 470/1077), his Shamsu'd-din Mu'âsh fi'd-din (ed. by Husayn, Cairo, 1949). He played a part in the Buyid political Saljuq invasion. These events belong to the middle of the 10th century, when the original Daylam undoubtedly could remain in use centuries later in form, owing to the lack of a substitute. Its original implications have been completely forgotten. A striking illustration to this may be found in the fact that at present, 1953, in India, especially in Bombay, the term “Ihrâm” means a Persian Zoroastrian, while Persians are still called “Mohguls”: majâd-i Moghul-i, qanâd-i Moghul (Shi'ite) mosque, Persian Consul. Such expression as majâd-i mourners meaningless, as “the mosque of the Jews.”

by 900 "mogals" of Shâh-Khûshïh. The reason for such an invasion is quite clear. The darwish was led by the populatia, and therefore had to cater for its spiritual demands. Surely, no one would expect the people to patronise a beggar belonging to an openly hostile community. As the Ismâ'îlîs, and Shi'ites in general, were more persecuted and oppressed than others, they probably fled earlier and in greater numbers. The darwish had to follow these in order not to be left stranded. In this way Ismâ'îlism "edited" by the darwish came to the tribal area, and probably remodelled the local life as much as the Central Persian dialects spoken by the refugees reformed the original Kurdish of the Gurans.

But this is not the whole story. There are vague traces in some mediaeval sources, as e.g. "Abdul-Qâhir al-Baghdâdi (wrote ca. 429/1038), who in his al-Fârâq bayna'l-fârâq alludes to the fact that Ismâ'îlism (or, as he calls it, Qarnâniyya), was accepted by the "wild Kurds" and orî'd Mârûq, i.e. "descendants of the Zoroastrians." The reference is quite vague, as everything referring to the area with which we are here concerned, but it may be connected with another 150 years later, which is more definite in nature. This is the information given by the Jewish traveller Benjamin of Tudela, who visited these localities about 1173 A.D. He mentions some of the local inhabitants as being mulâhet, i.e. mulâhid, "heretics," as the Ismâ'îlîs were then called by their enemies. According to him, they were the followers of the "Old Man on the Mountain," i.e. the Imam of Alâmarî. Although this is also in the nature of an allusion, it suggests that there most probably already were a number of Ismâ'îlîs in this area before the Mongol catastrophe. We do not know whether the wave of refugees in which the Ismâ'îlîs were most probably quite prominent, had already found and contacted their co-religionists there. In any case, in the slow tempo of life in those localities, the process took quite a long time to develop.

9 Ed. Mohammed Badr, Cairo, 1910, pp. 266, 285.
10 A. Asher, "The Itinerary of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela", Berlin, 1840, as quoted in Minnî, 83. Despite all efforts to get a copy, and see whether more information may be derived, I had to be content with only what has been quoted there.

Personally, I would visualise the community in question as that which took place in the Ismâ'îlî Persia and in Sind. This is offered as a m. tribes, primitive in their development, were cheap and skilled "distress" agricultural refugees. In the course of time, probably some were assimilated, together with the which they had brought. The pathos furnished the main "colouring" of the Ismâ'îlism, although the conservative Kurds amount of ancient and Christian elements apparently took over the part of the class.

Although it would be quite hopeless to find explicitly mentioned in the AH writings, reflecting reformed community, it would be not quite unlikely that religious authority of a kind of Ismâ'îlism, of religious authority came far too much of the representation and their standpoint of the improbable that the s-thing of Ismâ'îlism.

The critical time, however, came toward and beginning of the x/xii-th c., when, w. the Nizârî Ismâ'îlîs who by that time settled greater opportunities to start the drive for over the community. The campaign started hereditary and independent local pirs. There was stiff opposition on their part. But the day was strong. It is quite possible that Shâh Khöshûn, the family of leading tribal chieftains, enjoyed being an acknowledged representative of the that such a combination of a hereditary title dignitary in one person was not unknown Fatimid government in Southern Arabia.

11 Cf. the short-lived domination of various Southern Arabia in the v/vi/xi-xii cc., who play a part of the headquarters of the Fatimid da'wat to o. the events of comm. in Eastern suggestion, Kurdish are not averse to using in the form of any decades, the new-languages and Ismâ'îlism probably beliefs of the popula-tion much a good s. The darwish propels priests.

the end of the ix/xv the easier situation. Anjûdân, received aising their control with a "purge" of must have produced hese were still quite in, belonging to the at popularity while mans. We can see the practice of the just on his death the nches of Sulayhids in some part in the trans-Yaman.
It is probably for this reason, as a manifestation of the reaction and protest, that the names of the new head, Ishaq, and some of his associates, the “angels,” took the unmistakably Armeno form. This was possibly a sign of the revival of the memories, still not entirely lost, of the latest phase before conversion, connected with sectarian Christianity.

A struggle soon arose, however, between the Incarnation and the “angels,” just as thousands of miles away, in Gujrat, where it was wagered between the descendants of Imams and the Abed, the representatives of the castes converted to the new religion. The difference only is that in India it was the khaks who in fact won, while in Kurdistan it was originally the Incarnation who won. But the withdrawal of the cooperation of what in fact formed the priestly class left the family of Atilish Bek standing alone against...
may not rarely find, in their secret risālas lists of the successive Ismaili Imams whom the Khlœdar darwíshes treat as the Shaykhs of a Sufic-like affiliation, sitārā, on the same footing as various well-known Sufic orders. Even at present in Persia the followers of H. H. the Aga Khan are invariably called maîras, implying their being regarded as disciples of a spiritual guide in a Sufic sense.

5. Works edited in this volume.

The texts edited in this volume form the contents of an Aḥī majma‘ā (pp. 1-175 of the edition), and extracts from several darwísh risālas. The principal Aḥī manuscript is a volume of 228 pages (16.5 by 10 cms, the text 14 by 7.9 cms, 11-13 lines to a page), on handmade Persian paper. Practically the whole of it is written in a bold though coarse Persian handwriting of what may be called “epistolary” type, abounding in ligatures which are not always easily legible. Very often it shows great negligence, omitting disjunctive dots or cramming the ends of lines. The main work is dated Thursday, the 12th of Sha‘bān 1291/24-iš‘-1874 (the day of the week is correct). The name of the scribe is not mentioned. The volume contains:


2. Additional bab to the preceding (ms. pp. 180-212), ed. 139-159. From the lower part of p. 207 (ms.) to the end of p. 212 the text is in Turkish (poetry). This portion is here reproduced photographically. Between p. 212 and 213 of the original ms. a blank leaf is left as if there was an intention to add more Turkish poetry.

3. Qurā‘-i Ḥaṣṣā‘ dar Jām‘-i Sultān Šahāk, as it is called in the initial lines, pp. 213-228 (ms.) or pp. 161-175 of this edition.

4. The poem of the darwísh poet Shaydā, ed. pp. 177-183.


The general characteristics of these text-spelling. Sometimes even the most ordinary beyond recognition. In the Tadhkīra one often especially the frequent omission of the conj. idāfa, or unnecessary addition of the particle ̀s should expect from the man who rarely put for whom writing is a very difficult task. It whether some errors are genuine or intenc quotations give much trouble because people to follow the rules of prosody. ̀s, while v. dialect had to be left untranslated because the unreliable, as apparently the copyist himself them. The Turkish poetry in Adharba hopeful proposition even for copying, and been said above, photographically.

The Tadhkīra‘i A‘lā is a complete work, possibly very short ones. The new the date of composition are not found in the

---

1 Both in the Tadhkīra and Minorsky’s tr. which ̀isfla, applications to various government a people of little education. They unfailingly believe will be more effective if more Arabic words are u they stupidly replace with Arabic words even the m Persian words, such as niz (soum) or shahān (pî). worse in these Aḥī texts is that apparently owning their authors obviously “Persianize” Gurani poem the original words or forms with their Persian equiv. the, written as the, with as, bi with bi, etc., the metre of the verse, but often making it unintelligi
oral tradition which could help us. The work is well-planned, with well-marked inner rhythm in it. If it had been in verse, it would have been an imposing mystical poem. The author shows signs of considerable talent and literary taste.

The beginning of the book contains much material which has been derived from Ilthim-i-ashari sources, and presents nothing original, except for the passages embodying cosmogonical ideas, which were apparently combined from several independent versions. The stories of the five later Incarnations are built on one and the same plan, beginning with miraculous birth, and ending with the farewell apotheosis and the final disappearance.

The text often comes very close to that of Minorsky's manuscript, which was also found in Tehran, in 1902. It is dated 1259/1843, and also comes from the district of Waramina, SE of Tehran. Minorsky's manuscript is in the form of a bayat ("album"), and contains fragments of a book of similar content to the Tadhkira. It is to be regretted that except for a few "specimen pages" and Turkish poems the text has not as yet been published.

V. Minorsky most uncompromisingly calls his text Kitāb-i Saranjām, and regards it as something like an AH Bible. In the course of my long and searching inquiries I could never find any

---

3 An interesting "prophecy" of Sulṭan Sahāk (T.31) predicts that twelve of Shaykh Ṣafī's descendants will be kings (pādshāh i kanvād), showing that the Tadhkira (or one of its sources) could not have been written before the end of the Safavid dynasty in 1148/1736. The actual date of its composition surely could be much later.

4 The population of various villages in the Waramina district belonging to the AH sect entirely consists of the descendants of the hostages which early Qajar government used to take from various Turkish nomad tribes to assure their allegiance. These hostages (ōmānāt) were settled on land suitable for cultivation, and have become by now so much Persianised that many of them can no longer speak Turkish, although memory of their Turkish origin, and some connection with their original tribes are still preserved. Some clans as the Suḥāk-ṣafī ("Black-shielding"), although AH, keep aloof from their co-religionists, and do not allow them to participate in their jen.

---

trace of the existence of another copy of the AH
any trace of the existence of any "Bible" genera
natural state of affairs among an almost entire
community which only knows one book—and even the
Coran. Inquiries about the existence of such
the Saranjām, invariably produce the exclamation:"O, yes, of course, there are many such books,
is in a hundred volumes. In the house of S.
late resident of Gihvāra, near Kerind) there are
qātar ba-qātar, rows and rows." But it is not out the people are simply speaking about nothing. There is nothing improbable in the
educated religious leaders, with priestly turn
probably the case with the late Sayyid Rustam
collections of religious works. But it seems
d\nthese are AH books. The leaders delight in
and will be the last people to reveal the truth
their supposed "treasures."

Comparing the text of the Tadhkira translation of his manuscript it is possible
portions coincide not only in the subject and in even in some sentences. Various expressions
word, although such coincidence is never o
the course of a few consecutive sentences. In th
however, although the subject is more or less t
different, introduces new names, new details a
narrative. Finally, there are in both manus
are missing in the other. Quotations in Gur
quite a proportion of them are different in both.

For these reasons it is impossible to suggest
are either independent translations from a Tur
independent reproduction of one and the same
from memory. Or should we postulate
circumstances that the author or compiler of
access to Minorsky's text, and partly used it
The Tadhkira is dated, as we have seen, 1291/1

---

work, and even
This is quite ille
reference books and
questionary point
that they know
fact that some
mind (as was
really possess
whether all
give access to
ith Minorsky's
see that certain
lace of ideas, but
the same, word
lete, anyhow in
majority of cases,
ane, the text is
ew tone of the
stories which
rarely coincide;

at the two works
original, or an
original in Persian,
not improbable
Tadhkira had
composition?

and Minorsky's
of various points of belief and practice. It shows as the collection of the anecdotes about Atîr Tadhkira (T 139-159), and probably was compiled in the middle or end of the XVIIIth c.

A very valuable piece is the copy of replies (T 152-154) to some unspecific elucidating certain points of religion. This Shi'ism when the scattered communities of wrote to their Imams for clarification.

The extracts and poems collected from various sources sometimes supplement what original AH texts known to every one. The Khââkûr darwish, rank of the independent murshid (i.e. to receive are bound by custom “to hand over their he Haqiqat” (sar dar Khânân-i Haqiqat supûd to the jam, and coming in contact with the A as much as they can concerning the ceremonial various occasions, etc., all that the ordinary knows since his childhood. Those who can write what they hear in their risâlas, in order not however, remember that the text of such pra.

Darwish Nûr-‘Alî Shâh Amjudu’l-‘urâfa’ 1920. I had long and interesting talks with him a complete copy of his risâla of that of his murid, Parvâna-‘Alî, written before 1918. Darwish Gulshir Sabzawar comparatively well-do-to family. He died in his relatives, on their own initiative, willingly risâla and khasînâ (which, as a great rarity the same tendency Bek added to the shah Bek’s written correspondents, ca “the dawn of faithful similarly darwish risâlas are not an as superfluous, in order to attain the erek-i irshad), in the house of .... When admitted they try to learn prayers recited on every day of the sect at times forget. We may, is rarely fixed. Nishâpur died in im in 1918, and together with the family lived several years before 1918, and is presented to me his risâla.

6 In addition to this we may note that the AH may still preserve a certain amount of their that followed, or pretend to follow, in their policy nor to (itna’sashari) supporters. It is probably for this reason that this small collection two prayers connected with the darwishes of not another, and is a kind of the people’s messu of about an.
British Museum). The reason for their generosity was the superstition fear of those calamities which are promised to all uninsinitiated and unauthorized persons who keep or peruse secret darwsh insignia.

Perhaps it will not be out of place to add here a few words regarding other genuine AH works in existence (as known to me), the number of which...still remains insignificant.

A few Turkish poems, the principal being the Qasib-nama ("The book of the centre", obviously the centre of the universe, the Incarnation), appended to Minorsky's manuscript, were edited and translated by him into Russian (Mini, 67-96). He also studied a Behai controversial work quoting some Turkish kelams (Mini, 269-302).

A modern work giving an exposition of the AH doctrine, under the title of Farragul-akbar, by Haji N'imatul-ah of Jayhunabad in the district of Dinawar (d. 1920), is in the possession of Prof. Minorsky, who gives a very short note on it in Mini, 11-12. It appears to be a reformist or sectarian composition, promoting a new set of ideas. When I inquired about the book in 1948 of certain sectarians who were supposed to be well-informed, they knew nothing about it.

A fragment of an AH work of mystical content, with an incomplete version of their cosmogony, was found by me in Shiraz in 1948, and edited and translated in the "Collectanea" vol. 1, 1948 (pp. 147-184), "An Ali-lhaj Fragment". It belongs to a quite different tradition than that of the Atish-begs of Waramin and Tehran. I submitted it to several informed members of the AH sect while on a visit to Persia in 1948, and they acknowledged its authenticity while admitting that they have never seen it before, and objecting to certain isolated expressions found in the text.

This, and the fragments of the stories of Atish Bek's miracles, were apparently at I have in Gurani, devoted to me into my by that much came with the "Kuruni" name of their unable to

Such are the poems by 'Ali-n-illa, Shaykh Amid, Parastin, Salm Qull, and others. It is a hopeless proposal the exact period to which they belong, but most probably the XIX-th c. may be suggested. There were two Taymin informers, one is sometimes called Buneng, "the elder", obviously the younger, Taymin Banyin, was executed in 1255/1832, see the Nishah-i-mawali (Qaduriy, lit. 1715, p. 10; saynur, Mullik to ascertain beginning of order to my the other, nishahin in
II. BELIEFS.

1. SIGNIFICATION.

As mentioned above, the beliefs of the AH have apparently never been subjected to theological systematization and polish. They form a conglomerate rather than a synthetic body, consisting of rough and raw fragments of ideas belonging to different ethnical or cultural milieus, and incidentally cemented together by the patriarchal and primitive tribal conservatism of usage. The practically unsynthesized, "undigested" state of such inclusions presents an opportunity for the student to trace their probable origin, and perhaps form an idea of the chronology of their stratification.

This conglomerate-like structure of beliefs may chiefly depend on the peculiarities of the social system of tribal groups. Here we find smaller units, clans or minor tribes, continuously regrouping in various tribal coalitions with big tribes, united by economic considerations. A prosperous and powerful tribe attracts to its protection many associates from amongst the impoverished minor tribes, thus rapidly growing into an important tribal group to which it gives its own name. But drought or other cause of loss of cattle may as quickly reduce its importance and cause a reshuffling in its members. It seems, however, that in all such coalitions no special attention is usually paid to the religion, race and language of the participants. As it was formerly in Fars, a large group as that of Buwayr-Ahmad could be composed of all four local nomad peoples,—Lurs, Arabs, Turks and Persians, some being Sunnites and others Shi'ites. In this way, both in friendly contact and also during the interminable tribal feuds, many opportunities are presented for borrowing of ideas; although patriarchal conservatism of the milieu does not permit rapid synthetization of the elements. Under conditions such as these the conglomerate-like structure of beliefs would be exactly as one might expect.

The only reliable written source at our disposal is what little we have of the AH tradition recorded in the few works now accessible to us. It consists of aetiological myths and syncretical legends which explain the origin and purpose of various practices, beliefs and injunctions. The symbolism of many stories is fairly plausible, but there are also many which appear to be mere miracle stories or religious anecdotes. It is possible that these were also originally intended as aetiological myths but their purpose is either obscure to us, or, perhaps, has been forgotten by the sectarians owing to changes and reforms. It is also very important never to forget the great extent of fluidity of the AH tradition and beliefs, and also the fact that the written work at our disposal probably offers us only a small proportion of the whole extent of it, not only as it exists at present amongst the local branches of the sect but also as it existed historically.

What strikes the outsider about the tradition of the first of all its remarkably archaic, primitive tone, with so many miracles, its infantile logic, the type of reasoning entering religious dogma in its instructive stories. Every one who has personal experience of the Kurds would testify to the fact that they are a bright people of many excellent qualities. There is the archaic and infantile tone of their beliefs cannot be attributed to their particular backwardness. It must rather depend on their illiteracy which can itself be traced to the hopeless unsuitability of the obsolete Arabic script for the rendering of the sounds of their languages.

The sectarians themselves cherish exaggerated ideas about antiquity of their beliefs, seeing in this an equivalent of authority. They are well conscious of the infantility of these stories, but this does not detract from their value in their own eyes. It is quite possible that we have to deal here with a psychological factor. Their tradition is conveyed by word of mouth, and receive it from their parents as a kind of a secret and treasured heritage. It is practically the same case as with Christian families in which Biblical and Gospel stories are narrated to children "in simple language", i.e., without their deep implication and symbolism. The fresh and avid memory of the children...
merely the empty shell of the religious story, the anecdote, and in such form retards it through the rest of his life, as dead weight, which has no educative or character building effect. The stories rarely evoke sufficient curiosity to warrant reconsideration in later life, from an adult standpoint (which in exceptional cases may lead to the “re-discovery” of Christ and Christianity). Such a process is undoubtedly responsible for the apparent archaism of the beliefs which AH tradition preserves. This is why the members of the community sometimes fall an easy prey to that cancroid development of modern life in the East,—the Christian and Behai missionaries who badly upset the traditional outlook of the people without giving them anything of value instead, and turning them into outcasts from their own community.

Analysing the texts which are available to us now, we can make an attempt to classify such elements as can be identified. It is, however, a hopeless proposition to establish even an approximate chronology of the strata because many diverse influences could have been at work simultaneously, especially in the case of different Islamic persuasions and Christian sectarian movements. For this reason the list of such strata, offered here, does not necessarily represent a chronological sequence:

1. Relics of ancient animism, local or in the form of “wandering motifs” which may sometimes be identified. It is not easy to find out how far they form part of the still living folklore of the Kurdish, Luri and other tribes. It is quite possible that a considerable part belongs in the Kurdish folklore to the borrowings from the Turkish, and even indirectly Central Asian sources.

2. An indisputable strong imprint of a solar religion which may most probably be identified with popular Mazdaism which underlies Mithraism and Zoroastrianism.

3. Strong and comparatively recent traces of Christian beliefs which may perhaps be recognized as akin to the Paulician or Thonraki sectarianism in Upper Mesopotamia and Armenia of the mediaeval period.

4. Islamic elements, apparently chiefly Shi‘ite in nature.

5. Isma'ilism in a “darwishized” form which has given the final shape to these beliefs.

6. Late influences of Safavid and Qajar official Ithnainashari urbanism, Shi‘ite Sufism, and even the latest Persian nationalism, Behai moralism, etc.

As nothing has so far been done in the study of the folklore of the Kurdish, Luri or Adharbayjani Turkish tribes, it would be useless to analyse the folklore stratum in this complex, and we will proceed to the question of the solar cult.

2. Traces of Ancient Solar Religion.

Even at a first glance one may notice an undeniable and strong element of belief connected with a solar religion in the folklore relics preserved by the AH tradition. Different Incarnations exercise as one of their attributes complete authority over the sun and moon, bringing the sun down (cf. T 27, 35, 93, 102-103), reversing its course (T 73, 83), placing the sun and moon under the knees and sitting on them (T 102-103), etc. A variety of animals usually associated with solar cults are mentioned: falcon (T 58, 62, 67, 137), ram, deer, goat, stag, elk, “mountain bull” ghu-i kabl.1 The cult is mentioned several times as the mount of the youthful Incarnation.

More traces of a "submerged" solar religion may be discerned in some ideas which have been slightly modified by the changed outlook of their bearers. Their nature suggests connection with the Iranian world, as one would expect in the case of a people such as the Kurds. The territory which at present forms their habitat, in a wider sense, was already dominated since 1400 B.C.

---

1 It is not easy to say what is the ghu-i kabl, “mountain bull”, which so often reappears in the AH tradition, as there is apparently no animal of that kind at present. Is it aurochs (Bison bonasus), now extinct in Europe except in certain wild game sanctuaries in Russia, in the Caucasus? Many zoological terms used here cannot be faithfully rendered into English without special study. Some of such terms are, descriptive, - as qish-i 'ard, which does not mean simply “a yellow ram”, but is the name of a species of a wild animal. The text in Minl often has ghu-i bar (it does not occur in our text) which is most probably a case of bad spelling for khab, i.e. khes, a two year old ram (or may be a cognate wild animal). Our texts (pp. 92 and 103) offer interesting material: in a prophecy of Sultan Shabak (which, surely, is bound to come true) it is said that the coming Incarnation will sacrifice
by the Mitanni or Maltean empire with their religion of Mithra and Varuna (the latter subsequently developing into Ahura Mazda). Several centuries later the area became a part of the Median and Persian state, and the Iranian religion dominated not only Armenia to the North, but also a considerable portion of Asia Minor to the West. Things have considerably changed with the advent of Christianity, but there are ample proofs that, in the conservative Kurdish milieu, relics of antiquity lingered, or were still well remembered, as late as well into the Islamic period. ‘Abdul-Qahir al-Baghdadi, who wrote ca. 429/1038 (al-Farq baynas’il-firaq, Cairo, 1910, pp. 266, 285), refers to the aswad Majus, i.e. the descendants of fireworshipers. About the same period Armenian church authors distinguish between the Zoroastrians and the Arevordiq, “the Sun-worshippers…who openly proclaim themselves to be Christians”, as Gregory Magistros (d. A. D. 1058) writes (The Key of Truth, 148). They were perhaps the same as Solis Fidii of Nerses Shinorhal (d. A.D. 1173), who, however, does not give any details (ibid., 157 sqq.).

The term Majus was always very loosely applied by mediaeval Muslim authors to pre-Islamic Iranian religion, not only to real Zoroastrianism which is out of the question in our case. In fact, certain tenets and religious observances of the AH suggest an incomparably greater affinity with Mithraism,—in so far as it is known at present. We may recall the fact that the latter began to spread Westwards about the time of the appearance of Christianity, the “carriers” being almost exclusively Roman soldiers. They spread it to Italy, Middle Europe, and even as far as Scotland where relics of mithraea, Mithraic praying halls, were found. It is to be deplored that no genuine literature of Mithraism has been preserved, and what little is known about its belief, mythology and

rites can only with difficulty be partially restored from the study of the numerous sculptures and inscriptions which the adepts have left. There is, however, no doubt as to the close connection of Mithraism with what may be called the unreformed, Devatyanian, version of the Iranian religion which, judging from the part played by Zervanite beliefs, perhaps served as the basis of Mithraism as it later contributed to Manichaism.

Unfortunately, the text of the Avesta as it is at present, has been so badly manipulated and adulterated that a direct reference to it is rather a hopeless proposition, for those who do not make it the special subject of their studies. I therefore had to refer to the latest work in which the material supplied by the Avesta has been systematized, namely E. Herzfeld’s “Zoroaster and his World” (Princeton, 1947; hereafter abbreviated in references as “Z”). This work has been attacked on all sides for the alleged unsoundness of the author’s theories. But here we need have nothing to do with them, merely using the materials on which it is based.

Unfortunately, there is nothing for summing up the information on Mithraism except for F. Cumont’s “The Mysteries of Mithra” (Engl. translation, London 1903), referred to here under “C”. It is based on ideas about the ancient Iranian religion which were current still in the last century. The author does not distinguish between the ancient period, Zoroastrianism and (modern Indian) Parsism.

Mithraism, in the form of the religion of Sol Invictus, the Invincible Sun, of Roman soldiers, was probably much contaminated with non-Iranian elements. The text of the Avesta, especially relating to Mithra, as the tenth (Mihr) Yasht, has been badly distorted and falsified, so that it is not easy to arrive at reliable conclusions.

Mithra, the highest deity (baha) of the ancient Iranian religion, is a god in human form, the ideal and most valiant hero. He is the Lord of light, of the luminous skies, and is the precursor and prototype of the Manichaean Primal Man, Khurmuzta of the Central Asian Manichaean texts. In mythology he is described as riding out at dawn in his quadrigue, the chariot driven by four
which horses. He is accompanied by his two wives, Rtish (or Ast or Ash) and Parandi, his most trusted servant Srosko or Srosh, another servant Rashnu, and the driver Damoish Upamano, whose counterpart is likened to that of the wild boar. Each of these persons is a personified attribute of the deity in the form of an "extension," or specialisation, of his nature.

Mithra himself is the principle of light, clarity, righteousness, orderliness, protection, the King of the World (vispanam dadyu nam dadywaryirth, i.e. "the ruling head of all the provinces"), the lord of "wide pastures." His main function is to protect humanity, to be an intermediary between man and god, to be the "protector of the farmer," "keeper of the village," "one who sustains the pillars of the house" (cf. in our texts the miracles connected with the pillars of the mosque of Kufa). Very few obsolete details need to be deleted from this picture in order to bring it in full agreement with the Shi'ite ideal of the Imam.

The reformatory activities of both Zoroaster and Xerxes have reduced Mithra's position to that of a minor deity, yozata. His principal servant was taken away and associated with Ahuramazda, one of his wives. Rtish, was made the daughter of the latter, and the other, Parandi, one of Ahuramazda's nine wives. It seems, however, that in the AH traditional ideas of the Incarnation and the "angels" accompanying it, we may find a parallel to Mithra with his associates.

The principal associate, Srosko, whose name is derived from the verb meaning "to hear," is traditionally explained as a personification of absolute obedience: gush-ash shinwad bashad, as a modern Persian would say, which implies not only obedience as such, but also sincere, warm readiness and willingness to observe any sign of his lord's will. Some German specialists (as Hertel, apod Z 465) had a better idea. They identified Srosh as chief of the police, or head spy "Mithra's ear." This may serve as a good specimen of learned wisdom. But on whom did Srosh have to spy in Mithra's "wide pastures"? Moreover, Mithra's standing epitaxy is "undeceivable" (adabyamna), implying (as in the case of the AH incarnations) omniscience. We may recall the fact.

Tauroctonus Mithra.
Bas-relief in Hedernheim, Germany.
Note the scene of Mithra's Covenant with the Sun-god at the top.
SOLAR RELIGION

that ears can be used for other purposes than spying or eavesdropping, and the epithet "Mithra's ear" may in religion mean the intermediary who conveys to his lord the prayers of suffering humanity, just as a trusted servant in a patriarchal household is used to convey matters to his master. It is in this sense that Jabrá'il-Banyámí is in our texts (T 13) called mukhbir-i amin, "trusted REPORTER."

The fact that parallelism between Srosho and Jabrá'il-Salmán-Banyámí is not entirely fortuitous may be seen from an interesting coincidence: in Y. 57, 23, Srosho is called derau-disht (or derau-disht), i.e. "instructor in religion," dālū. This is strikingly reminiscent of Banyámí after whom the AH religion is called shart-i Banyámí, and who appears as pîr-i shart, spiritual master of the covenant.

The next associate of Mithra in his chariot is Rashnu. Hertel (ap. Z 465) traces his name to the verb in Vedic Sanskrit conveying the idea of protection, and in a typically German way makes him the "chief of the criminal and protective police". We may with much justification reverse the standpoint, and believe Rashnu, traditionally regarded as a personification of justice, to be a parallel of Dāwūd of the AH in the sense that he protects not Mithra, but suffering humanity, from injustice, thus specializing in that attribute of Mithra, mediation, in the sense of offering a helping hand to those in difficulties (mukhbil-gushā). It is interesting to note that in the AH community of Sharaz, the expression Dāwūd-i Dītqān, i.e. "the Dāwūd of (just) judgment", is often used.

A rather enigmatic figure in Mithra's chariot is the driver, called Damaish Uṣāmano, who had the appearance of a wild boar, who in the orderly minds of German scholars is made Mithra's executioner. His chief function is to punish, and this makes him a parallel of Muṣṭafā-yi Dāwūdān of the AH, who sometimes assumes the form of terrifying animals.

One of the AH angels is Pîr-i简易, often pronounced as简易, with  as in English mule. His secretarial functions would be rather too anachronistic to the antiquity of Mithra's myth. But, as noted by Herzfeld (Z 832), the Avesta already knew court-like
proceedings which in its eschatology are promised for the Day of Judgment when books will be produced for reference. This recalls the AH daftar-i bātin.

In addition to the three male figures there are in the chariot of Mithra his two wives, Rtiš (according to "scientific" reconstructed pronunciation, or Arti, īrti, Ashi, according to the "priestly" traditional form) and Pārândî, or Pârendî. The former, the personification of righteousness and orderliness, was in her evolution (cf. Z S16) more and more associated with Ardvisura Anahita, the deity of fertilising waters, while Pârendî, who is also retained in Indian mythology, is the deity of prosperity and wealth. They are often mentioned together in the 16th Yâšt, Rtiš with the epithet vaikî, good, and Pârendî with the epithet vâravârtha, "with a fast chariot" (cf. Z 460, 461, 462).

It occurred to me that perhaps the enigmatic name of the female angel of the AH, Razbâr, might have something to do with these two deities, the name being a worn out and phonetically reduced combination (of the dhwâdrâ type), of Rti-Pârândî, through such stages as Rati-Pârândî|Radî-Pâr|Raz-bâr. What suggested this idea to me was the fact that just as in the AH texts only two names are connected with the term sharti (which entirely corresponds to the ordinary term 'ahd): Banyâmîn-i (or pîr-i) sharti and Razbâr-i sharti, so in the Avesta only two names have the standing epithet rityojāshyō, i.e. righteous, namely Srosho and Rtiš. In our texts the connection with the sharti is even preserved in the re-incarnations of Razbâr. Thus the sister of Atish Bek, Pari-Khân, is called Pari-Khân-i sharti. We know what the sharti, or 'ahd, of Banyâmîn was, but the sharti of Razbâr remains enigmatic. It would be tempting to believe that sharti in this case is used as an equivalent of 'ahd, which in many respects forms a synonyme with 'ahd, being used in the sense of wedlock in the case of Razbâr. It would not be unreasonable to surmise that the vague memory of the conjugal connection was preserved, but was obliterated at a later stage by the Marcionite mentality of Christian sectarianism which influenced the idea of the Incarnation.

Razbâr is sometimes styled the Lady of the Resurrection, Khātūn-i Qiyâmat. This is most probably yet another imprint of Christian ideas, but again is almost certainly based on a vague underlying memory of the close connection between her and the Deity.

Perhaps it would be going rather too far to question the origin of the qadafhori, torchbearers, the two youthful and feminine looking figures invariably appearing on the icons of the Tauroctoious Mithra. They are usually interpreted as the "extensions" or revelation of Mithra's nature, the rising and the setting sun. But we must remember that originally Mithra is not the sun, but eternal and indestructible Light, which neither rises nor sets. These figures "bore the enigmatic epithets of Cauši and Caušopáti" (C 129). Were not these two supposed beardless young men really two young women, Mithra's wives, in that warlike and manly dress, suited for driving in a chariot, and turned by Greek sculptors into youths?

Another detail deserving of note is the myth, often depicted in the sculptures of Mithraism, of the deity's covenant with the sun-god, whom Mithra subdues. The word mithra by itself has the meaning of agreement, P. mihr. He is the mediator, the principle of appeasement, his idea was associated with the middle way, the avoidance of extremes. In Mazdaism the sixteenth of each month was dedicated to him, and in the AH religion we find that their main yearly festival, the ʿid-i Shahî, explained in a cumbersome way as commemorating the revival of the Qâbâltās pilgrims, falls upon the 16th, 17th and the 18th of the month of Island (about the 6th of March).

Another interesting feature is the extraordinary part played by sacrifice to which we shall return further on). This may be reminiscent of the enormous slaughter of cattle by Xerxes, and recalls the Zoroastrian accusations of the wastefulness of this custom. It is interesting to note that we never find any mention of the purpose of such sacrifices. They are neither intended as atonement for sins, nor as a propitiation for the Deity, but always appear as if simply a matter of ritual.

One of the most interesting features of the AH religion is
what is called *iqrār*, used in the special sense of a confraternity group of two men and one woman, the purpose and meaning of which so often offers scope for various obscene allegations on the part of the enemies of the sect. It appears to be a development of the ancient idea, discussed by Herzfeld (Z 289-291) in connection with the 'Ordeal by Yashā, and other cognate passages in the Avesta, to prove that the term *রਾਹ*, "amicitiae", had as its purpose a covenant of mutual help on the Judgement Day, when one had to produce a witness who would testify one's words.

This is exactly what underlies the strange demands of the covenant of Banyāmīn in which every appointed "angel" demands a "witness", who in his turn also demands a witness of his appointment. And this equally refers to the *iqrār*, in the technical sense, i.e. covenants of confraternity of the AH. As in everything, there is some fluidity or uncertainty in this custom. In our texts (T 84) the number of participants in the group should be four persons (chāhār tām bā ham *iqrār* shatwānt ki dar rāzi-i ākhr bā gurāh wa bā gurāh-hum shorāk bāshand), i.e. "four persons should make amongst them a covenant that at the Last Day they will share each other's good and evil actions". But on p. 168, also on the authority of the same Sūltān Šāhāk, it appears that there should be three members in the group: *iqrār-i ah-lī baqatul dā barādar yā khvāhar, dār bāshand az ham", i.e. "the covenant amongst the AH (should be made between) two brothers and one sister. (They must be living) in different places".

V. Minorsky who in his works takes much interest in the matter (although in actual life the custom is hardly of importance, and is rarely heard of amongst the AH), says (MinI, 230) that "fusson a des buts pratiques de perfectionnement moral", — the idea which would be hardly intelligible to the ordinary AH rank and file. But at the same time he completely disregards the most important statement of his best informer, the Sayyid of Kalārdasht, that such groups are formed for the Day of the Resurrection. He finds the origin of this practice in the "fusson Rezhar-Mostafa", and its being placed under "special patronage of Razhār", on the basis of the story in MinI, 3-4, 115, which is here translated in the Appendix II, in which the fact of such "union" is incidentally mentioned between a certain Musṭafā and a certain Razhār.

As far as I can see, there is no aetiological myth for such *iqrār* in the AH tradition so far known. Perhaps the AH did not invent any because they had taken the practice over from their ancestors. It seems that the same idea re-appears in Persian Ismailism (cf. the *Panidīyāt-i Jawwānird*, text p. 57, transl. p. 35). MinII, 231 also refers to an interesting document discovered by M. A. Danon which indicates that similar "unions" existed in the beginning of the XVIth c. amongst the supporters of the Safavid shahs, the participants calling themselves Ḥaqq-qurandashi, "brother-in-God". It would be interesting to find out whether the idea is a Persian national belief, a relic of great antiquity.

In conclusion, we may refer to the frequent references in the AH tradition to what were probably ancient places of worship connected with a solar cult, identified with isolated rocks or peaks, called *gang, bhār, ml*, Turk. *tāh*, and also caves (reminding of the Mithraic *spelaos*). The part of the cave was apparently prominent in Mithraism, although they are never much used in Muslim Persia at present, except as shelter for the cattle.

3. Cosmogony.

Cosmogonical ideas play an important part in the tradition of the AH because they are fond of tracing the origin of their various religious institutions to the "time before time was created". This applies particularly to their principal rites and dogmas, such as the sacrifice, *jam*, i.e. *jum*, religious assembly, the *short* of Banyamin, etc. As with everything in the tradition of the AH, their cosmogony shows a great degree of fluidity, in details, in the sequence of events, and their interpretation. It seems obvious that as far as it is accessible to us, it is a chaotic collection of elements derived from various sources which cannot always be reliably identified. The *Tadhbira A'llā*, in our texts, apparently contains the most detailed, although confused account (T 5-17). Next comes the Shirazi fragment ("Collectanea" I, pp. 147-184), then the *Riāla* of Gulshir Sabzwārī (T 190-194). MinI, 63 and 78 also contains some references to cosmogony.
The version of the Taḥdía is apparently the result of the compiler's efforts to make the story as imposing as possible, and this is why he includes everything in it—the usual Biblical-Coranic legends as well as the symbolic adventures of Jabraʾl of the Sufis and even the popular idea of the earth being supported by an angel who stands on a bull, the latter on a fish, and so on. As to the genuine AH ideas, it appears that they have been collected from different versions of the story combined without any special order.

Strange as it may be for a people who lived hundreds of miles away from the nearest sea, in their idea of creation the AH regarded water, sea, as the basic element—perhaps a relic of Mesopotamian mythology. The Deity first manifests itself in a pearl (durr), “from amongst five sārat” (i.e. forms, persons) bringing to mind the Holy Family, Panji Tām-i Pāk. Such manifestations are repeated with an ever increasing number of sārats every time—7, 17, 47, 72, etc.—the purpose of which is not clear. They are, however, the prototypes of various details of the apotheoses which conclude the stories of every earthly Incarnation.

The choice of the pearl as the abode of the manifestation is obviously a naive attempt at the reconciliation of the principle of strict monotheism (tawhid) with the undeniable plurality of the visible world, created by One God. The pearl, though of one colour, appears to the human eye as of many varied and changing colours, which is merely an illusion, the fact at which this symbolism drives.

The Creator (here Khāliq instead of Khaliq)\(^1\) then creates from his own Pure Light a pearl “in the form of a lamp (qandil)”, and the latter becomes water. All this is obscure, and the obscurity is intensified by a strange expression in the text (T 8): ān qandil-rā āb ṣalīd. There must be either a lacuna, or the particle -rā is superfluous, a kind of “Tehranism”, “-rā” of the colloquial slackness, as it may be called. The Creator then creates the Sūj-i Nār (explained below) for the purpose of heating the water of the

---

\(^1\) It seems doubtful that the compiler used this form being conscious of its special implications.

---

sea which turns into foam (hajj), which, in turn, is solidified into earth. The heating process also produces air and vapours from the water. Clouds are constructed as sieves, and their purpose is to carry water to various parts of the world. Land formed from solidified foam, floats on the surface of the sea. To make it more rigid, langars (anchors, apparently in the sense of beams) are created in the form of ranges of mountains.

This apparently happened before the sky was created. “The King of the World (T 9-10) was with the four highest angels (Jabraʾl, Mikāʾl, Isrāfīl and ‘Azrāʾl, whom he had created from drops of his Pure Light) sitting on the surface of the water. Suddenly they saw the holy substance (dhāt-i pāk) of Razbār, the Lady of the Resurrection (Khālīn-i Qiyyumat) who came bringing out of the sea (az muwān-i bahr, obviously for bahr) a kulācha loaf of bread, to offer to the King. The latter ordered the four angels to form a jam at which the bread was distributed, while he himself offered prayers. Then the earth and the skies became steady, and the kulācha became the skies”.

This combination of symbols of cosmic importance is an obvious relic from remote antiquity. The kulācha bread, as it is known in Persia now, is the ordinary leavened bread (the same as is called in Bombay nān, the name indicating its being introduced by the Persians), which is baked in a round pan, about 10-12 inches in diameter. In Persia it is made only in the towns. Its surface is flat, usually browned with a mixture of yolk, water and sugar. Thus in nothing but its round shape can it be compared to the skies\(^2\).

As already mentioned, Rūsh, the wife of Mithra, was gradually associated with Ardvisura Anahita, the deity of the fertilising water, and this here refers to Razbār. She originally formed part of the

---

\(^2\) The photograph of a bas-relief depicting a Mithraic religious assembly, no. 36, p. 159 of F. Commen's "Mysteries of Mithra", shows loaves of bread in the familiar shape of "buns", flat at the bottom and semi-spherical at the top. This would better recall the cupola of the sky over flat land. Terms used to describe the forms of bread surely change often and very rapidly, and we cannot be positive that the form of the kūlācha was the same in bygone times as it is at present.
sape being as 'Aznâl (T 15) whom the Creator split, and "from between these two a light dripped out which became a kulâcha". That the person of 'Aznâl should be divided into man and woman, seems to me to be an indubitable reminiscence of Zurvanism: Zrvân or Zrvan was bisexual, man-woman (cf. A. Christensen, "Études sur le Zoroastrisme de la Perse antique", Det Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Selskab, XV, 2, 1928, p. 52). Zrvan-Kronos was a great deity in Mithraism, and was recognized in Manichaism.

Razbâr, in her "aspect" approximating that of Aradvisura Anahita, appears (it is not stated from where), and produces from the sea a round loaf of bread which is at once distributed (as a sacrament?) in the jam. The force of this act is so immense that it stabilizes the floating earth, while the (sacramental) bread itself becomes the skies. Combined with the epithet "Lady of the Resurrection", this story suggests Christian connections, which, if accepted, also explain why the kulâcha was taken out of the sea. In early Christianity one of the favourite symbols of Christ was fish. Its original and genuine Adoptionist tendency regarded Christ as the Adopted Son of God who was "born" in the ceremony of baptism. Thus Christ, as fish, was "born in water". The production of the sacramental loaf from the sea, i.e. water, is obviously in tune with these beliefs. Here we meet them in a fossilized form, cut from all living religious context, and retained by that blind and obstinate conservatism which is peculiar to illiterate peoples.

The story of the creation of the luminaries, day and night, of seasons, man, Eve, of Paradise being taken to heaven, the symbolism of man's face and body, the prostration of the angels to Adam, are all of syncretic origin, and probably a result of long oral "rolling" of well-known Corano-Biblical motifs. The Sufi motif is represented by the story of Jâbnâl whose wings are burnt by the Creator as a punishment for his uncouth straightforwardness. There are, however, in these stories genuine AH elements: one of them is the absence of any mention of the "fall of Adam", and thus the introduction of "original sin" with which orthodox Christianity and also Manichaism were so much obsessed. Another significant matter is what appears to be deliberate avoidance of any reference to Satan, who is only alluded to in the story of the prostration of the angels under the name râmâl-râjîr, i.e. "(that) expelled and stoned one" (T 17). The most interesting allusions to Adam are contained in the Shirazi fragment ("Collectanea" I, p. 173 of the translation) in which it appears that Adam was a man given to an endless series of Adams, suggesting the eternity of man. 

With regard to Satan, so cautiously alluded to here, we may again suspect sectarian Christian influences. The AH doctrine is strictly monotheistic, and the Creator is the only God whom they know, the same substance which manifests itself in human form to mankind. But the basic theme, which most probably is entirely derived from the Ismaili phase in the evolution of the sect, as are many things in this conglomerate of ideas, contains heterogeneous "inclusions". Although the compiler of the Tadhkira apparently avoided such mystical stories, they are to be found in other texts. The version of the AH cosmogony found in the risâla which belonged to darwîsh Gulshîr Sabzawâri (T 190-194) narrates how the four handfuls of earth brought for the creation of Adam did not mix well together in kneading. Then the Deity's command comes: "Bring that deposit (or security, amûnât) which was deposited 30,000 years ago". It is not clear to whom the order is addressed, with whom the amûnât was deposited, for what purpose, or what it was. "Then the amûnât was brought, added to the dust, and the four handfuls could be kneaded well and shaped into the body of Adam". The latter, on coming to life, sneezes and pronounces: al-hamdî l-li-lâh, Glory be to God. "This al-hamd together with the sneezing was taken by the King of the World and again (bâz) made into a deposit (amûnât). We shall explain what it, symbolizes (ba râmâz-ash bi-râzim) later". It is sad that the promise remains unfulfilled, and no further reference to the amûnât is made in the text.

3 An interesting, yet quite obscure allusion is found in the same Shirazi fragment which presents so many peculiarities. It mentions that the Creator khâdî[

\*] = "Collectanea" I, 181, i.e. "made Himself to remain in the form of Adam", "He is the First Adam and the Last Adam" (ibid., 179).
It is difficult to find out whether this amanat is the same thing, or has something to do with that which is mentioned in the Shirazi fragment ("Collectanea" I, pp. 177, 184). Here, strangely enough, a Resurrection is mentioned (yawmu'l-hašr), although the story refers to the pre-creation period. This reminds us of the Ummul-kitāb ("Der Islam", xxiii, 1938), in which the Deity has to suppress repeatedly the insurrection of the disobedient spirits led by 'Azāzi'il (cf., "seven wars of Adam and Iblīs", haft majdūda'ī Iblīs vea Adam, 6, 11). Perhaps the same is implied in the story of the "inconclusive manifestations of the Deity", mentioned above, before that one under which the creation took place. The Ummul-kitāb also mentions an amanat—amanat vea amanat-dār-i Malik-i Ta'ālā, the latter being Salīmān, 172.

In the Shirazi fragment the rebel spirit appears under the Yazidi name of Malak Tā'ūs (which, I was authoritatively informed by some eminent Atish-Begis, is unknown to them). The rebel sees signs of the approaching yawmu't-hašr, i.e., cataclysm. To make sure he looks into the "box of the deposit" (qandw-i amanat), and finds there that his apprehensions are correct. The "box" in this case may, of course, be merely a figurative expression, because a deposit is usually associated with something valuable given as a security.

We may perhaps thus surmise that the amanat is the creative and vitalising principle, as is the nār ba-āriyat of the Ummul-kitāb (124), i.e., the Divine creative light lent to angels by the Creator, with the help of which 'Azāzi'il and his associates created (74, 82), and of which they were deprived by Salīmān after he had defeated them.

All this may perhaps suggest that either the Paulicians had in their doctrine an element of gnostic ideas concerning the creation being accomplished by the Demiourge, the "evil God,"4 or that in addition to the Paulician influences the ancestors of the AH were also in contact with real gnostics. In the doctrine of the "spiritual descendants" of the Paulicians, the Bogomils of Bulgaria, the name of that Demiourge was Satana'il.8 This name vividly resembles the Druse Sha'i'il (probably contracted from Sha'ai'il), whose name in Islamic sects is replaced by that of 'Azāzi'il. It is quite possible that the sentiment of religious awe, however faint and vague, is still lingering in the memory of the sect preventing its members from taking a similar attitude to that of the orthodox Muslim.

A really genuine item in the AH cosmogony, which seems to have no parallel in the beliefs of peoples who are in contact with them, is that of the Sāj-i nār, the "frying pan of fire." All my questioning of well-informed sectarians has failed to bring forth any clarification, and it is only from stories offered by the tradition that one may infer something about it. The sāj is an ordinary term for frying pan, and nār is an Arabic word for fire, also used in the sense of Hell. It is noteworthy that in this expression this Arabic nār is apparently never replaced with its Persian equivalent. Sāj-i nār is often abbreviated into Sāj. Sometimes it is written Sāj-i anār.

It appears that in this case the term sāj, pan, is not so much intended to convey the idea of the pan placed on a fire, for frying something, as to suggest a pan filled with fire, presumably burning charcoal, like a primitive charcoal burner (Persian mangal, pron. manghal). I have been unable to find out the nature of the fuel burning on the pan, or where and how it is placed under the

4 As F. C. Conybeare emphasises in his Introduction, many pages have been cut from the original manuscript of the "Key of Truth", most probably because they contained passages which would look particularly heretical to the orthodox theologians. They perhaps could have contained gnostic theories.
bottom of the cosmic ocean, on the surface of which the earth floats.

It apparently is not considered to be the limit of the universe, as various events are remembered by the tradition which took place under the Sāj. From one of its sparks (sharās, T. 10) Hell is created. In the story of Pir-'Alī it is said that he found the King of the World (T. 56) dar tāh-i Sāj-i Nār... ki bā bāhari kān ba-yārī masghal būd. Should we infer that this was also in the sea? It is said in the Shirazi fragment ("Collectanea") I, p. 183 and transl. 177 that the first jam was held in nār: dar nār basta shud. My Atish-Begi friends insist that the statement is absurd, and suggest an error for ro in jam dar (zir-i Sāj-i) nār basta shud, i.e., "and this jam was held under the Sāj."

In a darwish risāla, which, unfortunately, is not accessible to me now, a drawing of the Sāj is included, but it offers little help. The picture shows something like a discus, crossed by lines resembling layers of masonry. At the top and bottom of the page there were rectangular additions, the lower one red, with the inscription nār, fire. There were also other inscriptions which, unfortunately, I cannot recall now. The general impression conveyed by the drawing can perhaps be compared to a child's attempt to make a picture of a Russian samovar, of an old-fashioned spherical form, which is still not rarely met with in Persia.


Many Christian ideas and motifs can be easily recognized in the AH tradition, and more of them can be detected by penetrating their disguise which they have assumed in the lengthy process of the adjustment to Islamic outlook. Christianity apparently reached the confines of the Kurdish tribal areas still in the second c. A. D. By the end of that century it had penetrated far North, into Armenia, long before her official conversion by the exertions of St. Gregory "the Illuminator." As is well-known, Upper Mesopotamia, i.e. the country along the upper reaches of the Euphrates and Tigris, for a long time remained the chief territory on which East met West in either peaceful or violent contact. It was here, in Edessa (Urfa), that Bar Daysan, or Bardesanes (d. ca 222 A. D.), one of the precursors of Manichæanism, flourished and composed his works. Here later on rose the Paulician sect apparently so named after the bishop of Antioch, Paul of Samosata, who was relieved from his post in 269, and finally deposed in 272 when the emperor Aurelian (who was a heathen) defeated Queen Zenobia of Palmyra who supported the movement. Through subsequent centuries it was this area which formed the stronghold of the iconoclastic movement. Nestorianism continues to exist here until our own time. Under Islam it was probably here that the enigmatic Ummul-kitāb; with its strong Manichæan element, came into existence in the viii-th c. A. D. It knows Antioch, Armenia, Malāṭiya, Nišibin, etc., but never refers to the great cities of Persia or Arabia. The style of many parts of the K. al-'Alim wa'l-Ghalam, an Ismaili book of barely pre-Fatimid origin, resembles very much that of ancient Armenian Christian works. The famous Ismaili dā'i and author, Abī Ḥātim ar-Rāzī, of the beginning of the iv/v c., refers in his works to Armenia and its church authorities. The sect of the Druzes (in some respects precursors of the AH), whose founder was connected with Zawzan, also exhibits traces of Paulician influences.

One of the most potent sources of error in historical research has always been the influence of that mediaeval theological outlook which treated popular forms of religion as something undeserving of serious attention, mere perversions of the "true doctrine" at the hands of the illiterate mob. It is unfortunate that this attitude has been fully inherited and continued by modern Western scholars. Early Christian authors take little interest in indigenous Eastern Christianity, merely referring in vague terms to some heretical sects as, e.g., the Ebionites. We learn little beyond the fact that the Ebionites formed a Judaising gnostic sect which was spread "beyond the Jordan river". Such lack of information is of much consequence in the study of Islam, which, because it rose in an almost entirely illiterate milieu, could only incorporate those Christian elements which were available in the form of common knowledge with the masses, forming their popular religion. Much has been written to stress the presence of Jewish elements in Islam...
which were supposed to have been derived by direct borrowing from the Jewish colonies scattered in Arabia. But the fact which has been well attested everywhere, of the Biblical motifs being spread with the help of their “carrier”, early Christianity, has never been properly assessed.

Apparently the only serious attempt to take up this question and study the obscure problem was made by the late Tor Andrae in his works, “Der Ursprung des Islams und das Christentum” and “Mohammed the Man and his Faith”. In the former work the author analyses certain ideas of the original Islam with the help of Christian theological doctrines developed in the various Eastern churches, not the popular beliefs. In the second work (pp. 137 sqq.) he refers to sectarianism only in general terms. In our case, the case of the Kurdish milieu in which the AH doctrine arose, an incomparably more valuable work is “The Key of Truth” by F. C. Conybeare. It is an edition of an early mediaeval Armenian sectarian text accompanied by an English translation and most valuable commentaries. Working with concrete material, with the help of old Armenian and Byzantine literature, the author reveals valuable information which is important not only for the immediate purpose of our study, but also for Islamology in general.

He reveals an instructive picture. However imperfect and incomplete our material, it is possible to see that the original and indigenous form of Christianity, spreading Eastwards through illiterate masses, had in its simple doctrine enormous hold on the people owing to the great conservativeness typical of popular religions in general. In the Greco-Roman world, on the contrary, Christianity appeared as an imported exotic product, and was not properly understood nor accepted in spirit. Moreover, almost

from the start, it became the subject of learned theorising, and was adulterated with all kinds of alien philosophical ideas, doctrines, usages, heathen practices and ceremonies, symbolical theatricality, and so forth. By the end of the fourth c. A.D., by the exertions of the great and saintly Church Fathers and others, endorsed by numerous Synodes, it had already become perverted beyond recognition. But brutal coercion by the governments which patronised it served as a powerful argument to prove that it was the only true, genuine, authentic and orthodox doctrine, “original Christianity”. Those communities which obstinately followed the unadulterated version of the religion, the “old believers” such as the Paulicians, Thonakis and others, were declared dangerous heretics, and were subjected to merciless persecution. Even regular wars were waged against them, as in the viii and ix cc. A substantial proportion of the sectarians was compelled to seek refuge on Muslim territory. Many of them ultimately embraced Islam, and being scattered amongst other Muslim groups, could spread the influence of their ideas. If we can detect these in the localities such as Awraman or Shahrizur, some 400 miles from their original home, we may remember that the same ideas travelled thousands of miles in the Western direction, producing powerful movements such as those of the Bogomils, Patarenes, Cathars, Albignenses, Waldenses, etc., as far as Oxford (1160). Moreover, Bogomil ideas apparently spread ahead of the orthodox Byzantine Christianity to Northern Russia where they coalesced with the heathen beliefs of local Finnish tribes.

With regard to Christian elements in the original Islam and its early sectarian developments, it would be an error to look for their origin in the theologies of Eastern churches, and not in popular religion as preserved in sectarian communities. Very few of these had any genuine literatures, and even that little perished at the hands of their persecutors. The “Key of Truth” may be regarded as an exceptional case of the survival of such sectarian writings. It reveals many facts of great importance for the student of early Islam. And, in any case, we have little or nothing more to help

---

us, especially in the case of the communities like the AH.

This particularly applies to the central doctrine of the AH, the theory of the Incarnations of God in human form. As F. Consber wrote, the archaic forms of Eastern Christianity were in the main, Adoptionist in their outlook. They regarded Christ as an ordinary man who, however, by his struggle with his own human nature, attained the state of perfect sinlessness. This theory is identical with that of the Prophets in early Islam, anbārūn. with the pure (Muṣṭafá) person of Muḥammad being chosen (mukhtār) for the mission of the Apostle of God (risālat). The difference comes only in the form of the “call”. An angel appeared to the Prophet, ordering him “to recite”, while Jesus received baptism at the hands of St. John, and was filled with the Holy Spirit, thus becoming the adopted Son of God. In the Gospel of Luke (iii, 22), as preserved in the quotations found in early Christian works, there were the words, later on thrown out in the process of falsification at the hands of Western orthodox authorities: “This day have I begotten thee” (Κεύ clxi). In fact, the same Adoptionist idea underlies the Iṣnaḍī doctrine of Imamat: the future Imam is born as an ordinary man, but the Nūr, Light of Imamat, descends upon him the moment his father dies.

Such formally simple ideas were greatly complicated in the beliefs of the AH, and we may easily recognize in their complication influences of sectarian—probably Paulician, Christianity. One of the most salient features of their religious mentality is the abhorrence of every allusion to procreation in connection with the Incarnated Deity. This at once brings to mind the gnostics and those schools, like the Manichaean, who were under their influence. Marcion (end of c.A.D.) taught that Jesus, freshly formed of dust, was like the first Adam, and was born of his mother as if were water passing through a tube (Κεύ clxxxvii). This idea was common amongst the Paulicians who, probably under what may be called “the absence of widespread ideas”, exhibited syncretic tendencies, admitting the belief in miraculous birth. “Under this aspect the Paulician faith cannot be regarded as being so pure an example of its kind as was the Ebionism of Justin’s age, which held that Jesus was a man born from men” (Κεύ clxxxvi).

The dogma of miraculous conception in the case of Jesus was insisted upon in the orthodox theology in order to make him free from the hereditary or “original” sin with the theory of which orthodox Christianity was so much obsessed. In order to make it impossible for Jesus to inherit it from his mother, fantastic theories were invented ascribing miraculous conception to the Virgin Mary also. Early Christianity, and the sects such as the Paulicians, rejected all this, and called the Virgin Mary the mother of the man Jesus, not the “mother of God” (θεοτόκος), denying all claims to her deification, belief in her intercession for sinners, etc.

It is therefore interesting to note that the motif of the “supernatural mother”, probably at a late date, and from orthodox Christian sources, penetrated the AH beliefs. In our texts supernatural mothers are given to ‘Ali (Fāṭima bint Asad), and Sūnā Khātūn to Atish Bek, probably because of the impossibility to deny their ordinary birth.

We therefore find no consistency in the beliefs concerning the birth of the different Incarnations. The further we go back, the more miraculous the event becomes. Atish Bek and his father Muḥammad Bek are born in the ordinary way, but his grandfather, Qirmiz, was created from a piece of mutton. It is not so clear about Sultan Şāhāk in whose case the Divine Falcon apparently took the form of a child at the moment of his birth. And Shah Khūshnūn was conceived by a virgin who inhaled a particle which separated from the sun. He was in due course vomited by her in the form of a luminous object like a ball of shining quicksilver.

In the section dealing with the forms of worship we shall discuss the question of the connection between the jam and the
agape, communal meal, of the Paulicians and cognate sects. Here we may note some possible traces of the ancient veneration to the Eucharist. The AH cosmogony includes strange symbols, as that of (T 10) the holy substance of Razhār bringing out of the sea a loaf of bread of which the sky is created, or (T 94-97) the story of a poor woman who distributes her only loaf of bread to the darwishes begging in the name of ‘Ali, instead of feeding her famished children. This may be an echo of the ancient and Paulician Christianity which insisted that the Eucharist should be a single loaf (as in these two legends) of ordinary unleavened bread, distributed to the congregation of any size, together with a drink of wine. The latter, most probably, with the advent of Islam was given up, though a faint trace of the practice is preserved in the symbolism of the darwish initiation pâtma, i.e. sweetened water in which a single raisin is crumbled.

“Every common meal had among the Paulicians a sacred character” (Key cxciii). The Eucharist was invariably preceded by the agape, “the common meal of Christian love”. “(The Thonrakis) interpreted their sacrament (i.e. Eucharist) as a meal symbolic of the unity of the faithful”. (Key cxciii). All this vividly recalls the AH ideas about their jam, as in the expressions jum-i yârî, yâristân, etc.

Just as the AH, the Paulicians, and even early orthodox Armenian Christians in general, had no special buildings consecrated to worship. Church authorities of various periods complained on their showing great aversion to churches, altars, and any kind or religious buildings: John of Otson in the viii-th c., Sahak Catholicos and Nerses of Lambion in the xii-th c., together with others, who speak about the “ingrained prejudice” of their countrymen to these matters (Key cxcii). They always preferred to hold their religious gatherings, and partake of the Eucharist, in their private homes.

8 I have never seen in the AH texts any reference to wine. In any case it is possible to take for certain that it is not subject to a strict taboo, as is, e.g., tobacco. Some of the members of sect whom I met were enthusiastic for it. As is known, wine is much used in the Bekârî ritual (although this is flatly denied if the adept is questioned on the subject in the presence of the Sunnites).
use by the A.H. of the term 'āli or 'āli, obviously in the sense of the “saint”. Both these words do not differ in the pronunciation of the Kurds and Adharayjani Turks, and usually alternate in writing. The first, 'āli, in Arabic, means “high”, while the second, in Arabic, is derived from 'ārat, tool, and would be meaningless in the context. However, the Kurds derive it from the Arabic word 'āli, family (especially with regard to the holy family of the Prophet). A. Jaba’s “Dictionnaire Kurde-français”, p. 19, gives 'āli, “ceux qui habitent dans la même maison”. Thus it is possible that the term 'āli, as it should be read, means not only “saint”, but also “Sayyid”, i.e. relative of the Incarnation.

An interesting passage (Key 176) is found in the letter of Paul of Taron (d. 1123 A.D.) who condemns the Dharakis for permitting women to “baptise and mount the Bema”. This may be compared with Sultan Shahk’s prohibition of the practice of the “daughter of a Sayyid” acting as the āqat at the ceremony of initiation (T 168-169). Most probably the cause of such practice was the same as in the case of the A.H.—scarcity of the “eclat”.

A question may arise whether the term kākā, abbreviated as kāk, kaka, or kā, which forms part of the names of some “angels” and shaykhs (of the earlier periods), as Kāka Rīdā, or Kā Rāhmān, etc., is a relic of Christianity. We may note that it neither appears in the names of ordinary people, nor is found in darwish names. In Persian it is apparently used only in Fars, where it means “brother”. It is neither used elsewhere in Persian nor in Kurdish. It would be interesting to find out whether it is really connected with the Christian practice of calling monks by the name of “brother” so-and-so, “friar”? The texts at our disposal give no indication as to whether the “angels” were celibates. In the story of Muṣṭafā-i Dāwūdān turning into a cat (T 83-84) in which his family is mentioned (khāna) with “seven mastresses” (i.e. seven members who were sleeping in their beds), it is not clear whether these were his wife and children, or other relatives. In the story of the rascally son of Pīr-i Mūsī (T 80-83) some doubt arises from the fact that on p. 82 (p. 106 of the original ms.) he is called pūsr-i shaykh ‘Iṣa. Thus there are equally no reliable indications as to their being married men. The general impression would be rather that of their being celibates.

The name of Dāwūd, David, borne by the second “angel”, has apparently no Biblical connotations. It is not clear to me whether it had special importance among the Paulicians and Dharakis. But it may be noted that David was one of the great saints of the Russian Khliṣṭi (Neo-Montanists of the XIX c. and later). His icons in which he appeared dancing, with a harp and a scroll of his Psalms in hands, were common. It was in his capacity of the “sanctifier” of dancing, mentioned in the Bible, that he was specially revered. Dancing, as amongst the Sufis, was one of the means which the Khliṣṭi used for the attainment of ecstasy, those moments at which they were “seized by the Holy Spirit”.

5. Darwishes.

The A.H. tradition places so much emphasis upon the important part played by the darwishes in the evolution of the sect that it should be a cardinal aim in our analysis of its beliefs and practices to assess the exact nature and extent of the contribution made by those worthies. Unfortunately, however, to do this is out of the question. Although an enormous amount has been written on Sufism during the last 150 years or so, it must be sadly acknowledged that there are but a few worthwhile works, of no high standard in themselves, and the rest is simply useless. Nothing has been done towards the real study of the movement, the study of facts, not words. This, however, is obviously not the proper place in which to take the matter up from the very beginning. As, however, the darwish occupies a pivotal position in our material, we must offer some notes here, just a bare outline, on darwishes, and certain aspects of their lore.

‘Darwīsh, a Persian word meaning a “poor man” or mendicant, as Ar. faqr, mistrī, may be regarded as the generic term for religious beggars. This meaning is preserved even now in Persia. Qalandar, a term of unknown extraction, is the name given to the vagrant darwish. Qalandars mostly used to roam about in armed bands, and were sometimes quite akin to what during the earlier
part of the Islamic medieval period was known under the name of the 'aydr (later known as ghāzi). These were brigands operating on the outskirts of the Muslim world, and under the pretext of jihād, war for religious cause, living by plundering raids upon the peaceful population of the "infidel" country. Very often, however, they proved more ruinous to their own mother country than to the enemy. They were not only a permanent nuisance, but often a source of grave danger, and each government had to work hard to stamp out this evil.

The term Sāfi is often used in old literature as synonymous with darwish, but has gradually come to mean an orthodox educated devotee, belonging to one of the recognized Sufic organisations. At present in Persia the term is applied to any theologically educated person with philosophical, ascetic, mystical, or moralistic tendencies, who in fact may not be a darwish at all.

For the sake of simplification we may, having regard to what has been said above, use the term darwish to mean the representative of popular Sufism, and reserve the term Sufi for the representatives of the orthodox, organised, and theologically educated bodies of devotees.

Sufism as an ascetic and mystical school of Islam makes its appearance when the new religion has become an integral part in the life of every stratum of society. It was born in the atmosphere of the struggle of the multitude of sectarian movements against the government sponsored orthodoxy which was developing Islamic dogma. Originally Sufism was a kind of an amateurish pietistic movement devoted to study of tradition, hadith, and exuberant devotional practice. At first it was chiefly confined to the lower middle class in the towns—the petty shopkeepers, artisans, etc., who produced enough introverts, escapists, mystics, and so forth. As the movement gained in popularity, and found supporters not only in certain circles of the public, but also in the government, it began to attract more and more of qualified full-time exponents, and soon nests of piety appeared all over the Islamic world.

It is no longer disputed that Christianity was the chief source from which Sufic tendencies and practices originated. The question, however, arises, although it is still bound to remain without a solution, as to what the connection was between early Sufism in the sense of a theological pietistic "fad", and what are regarded as its popular forms. The usual theological attitude which dominates the Sufic literature is that the popular forms were mere perversions of the high standards and ideals of the learned Sufis at the hands of the illiterate and ignorant beggars. As with so many theological theories, this does not in the least accord with historical evidence.

Islam, spreading rapidly over the countries which it had conquered, found Persia to a great extent Christian, in addition to Manichee, Zoroastrian, Buddhist and some minorities. Monasticism was well developed in both Christianity and Manichaeism, and we may assume that in all the religions current in Persia before Islam there were in addition to official priests and monks many unofficial, underqualified, popular devotees, men of God, religious beggars, who lived on the population by dispensing their pious, magical and religious services to the lower classes.

Strict conservatism is the basic feature of the religious beggar's profession. He has to cater for that most backward miheu which itself changes very slowly. Competition compels him to observe very strictly various standards, established in the course of a long evolution, which become practically unchangeable in themselves. He has to conform to certain universal notions for fear of disgracing himself in the eyes of his customers and thereby losing his market. Everything, from his manners down to the last detail of dress and equipment, becomes standardised and in fact unalterable. Dynasties, governments and religions may change, but the religious beggar remains the same.

We may ask therefore: what became of these worthies on the advent of Islam? Did they disappear or had to change their profession with the acceptance of the new religion? There can only be one answer: no, they remained much the same even after the change in their religion. Their ways remained the same because they were not directly connected with the profession of the new faith.
Thus we can believe that the "popular forms of Sufism" are in fact incomparably older than Sufism which they were supposed to "popularise". The question arises as to the nature of the relations between these two in the beginning. Surely, early Sufis were inspired by the example of genuine Christian ascetics, not of mere religious beggars. It is unfortunate that Sufic hagiology dealing with that early period, which it depicts as the "Golden Age" of Sufism, consists of only bombastic fiction. All Sufic works, without exception, invariably regard the Sufic movement of their own time as a degeneration of the supposed "pure and genuine" Sufism of the past, and as therefore entirely unworthy of their attention and of being recorded. Therefore only very careful scrutiny may discover and collect genuine features of it in the works of its contemporaries, and even these may be merely of secondary importance.

The problem of the qalanderis one of the most difficult in this already very complex matter. The term most probably comes from the pre-Islamic world\(^1\), and in any case seems to have been

\(^1\) During the last forty years I tried to find any clue to the origin of the term, consulting specialities in various languages which may be concerned in the case. All was in vain: there is in Persia the word kalantar, "bigger", used in the sense of bāliīf, foreman, but this would not explain the initial q and the contraction of a in kalantar. Nothing can be suggested from Arabic, Turkish, Sanskrit, Armenian, or Georgian, and so forth. I thought of the Greek kalaris, from kalos, to summon, which perhaps could be used in the sense of Arabic ka'lat. This idea was suggested by the existence in Russian of the early mediaeval term kalakha (discussed below), which seems to be derived from the same root. But the painstaking inquiries, so obligingly made by J. A. B. Palmer, brought to light the fact that the term kalakha was only very rarely used in remote antiquity, and is not found in more recent texts. Theoretically it may be possible perhaps that the word ceased to be used in literature while it was preserved in the colloquial of low class people from which we must expect our term to originate. Colour in the sense of dā'ī would not require much strain, if we suppose that he was "summoning" people to join in the pilgrimage to some kind of specified sanctuary, or to contribute towards the cost of a pilgrimage in order to earn religious advantages, if the person was unable to go personally. (In Islam pilgrimage by proxy is not such a rare practice). Unfortunately, in this as in every matter connected with the evolution of illiterate masses precise historical testimonies are extremely scarce.

in common use in Persian for centuries before the iv/v c.\(^2\) It may be worth noting that with the introduction of Christianity in far-off Russia (xi-xii c. A.D.) an analogous variety of vagrant Christian devotees appeared under the name of kalikī perekhazhiye. Their description in mediaeval literature strikingly coincides with that of the Muslim qalanderis. While the latter were normally on their way for the pilgrimage to Mecca, the kalikī were similarly on their way to Jerusalem. They roamed about in bands (even the classic figure forty is preserved), had the same "terrifying" appearance (zabardast is the standing epithet of the qalendar), and their legends, partly incorporated in popular poetry, sometimes preserve the familiar motifs from qalendar lore\(^2\).

The story of the qalanderis may be briefly outlined as follows. Whether they were indigenous to Persia, or were originally connected with Asia Minor and Upper Mesopotamia, the economic ruin caused by the Saljuq invasion of the beginning of the viii c. pressed them out of the country. Probably for the first time they extended their wanderings to Syria and even as far as Spain. In their distress they were reduced to the status of jugglers, snake charmers, etc. (like the Madāris in India). Apparently their bands never had any central organisation. With the introduction of various Sufic organised "orders" or affiliations (nisila), for the purpose of legalising themselves, they sought ad hoc amalgamation with one of the more widely spread organisations particularly the more "democratic", such as the Qādiris, Rūfā's or Naṣabandis. In Persia, which was steadily changing to Shīʿism, they completely disappeared by the time the latter had triumphed, i.e. the x/xvi c.

\(^2\) The word qalantar appears in early Persian poetry as already quite an ordinary term. For instance, it is found in the quatrains attributed by the author of the Amānī, "qalantar" was maganūn sheikh Abī Sa'id (beg. v/ix c.) to the authorship of Abū Sa'id Abīl-Khayr of Mayhana (born in 357/968, d. 440/1049), as on p. 92.

\(^3\) Cf. Minl, lvi, one of those misplaced anecdotes which are associated with various incarnations by misunderstanding. This is the "perennial" motif of a woman's attempt to seduce a pious man who victoriously resists temptation. It is also familiar to Russian mediaeval religious poetry connected with the kalikī.
and the term qalandar was only preserved in poetry as a synonym for free-as-the-wind religious wanderer.

The section of the qalandars which was closely connected with Shi'ism then became known as the Haydaris, or Jalalis, or Khakhars. The official use of the term qalandar was probably given up on account of its old Sunnite connotations. Degenerate remanants of the qalandars are still found in India, the chief representatives being those in Sind who flock to the shrine of Lal Shabbaz Qalandar in Sehwan, and the snake charmer Madaris on the Eastern side of the country.

The Haydaris of Persia, although they apparently never formed an organised "order", and their different branches in fact remained autonomous, have absorbed all the popular darwish elements in the country. Their close connection with the AH is undeniable, and, as mentioned above, the question may be raised as to whether they originally formed the darwish or "monastic" wing of the community, in the same way as the "darwishes" in the Bektashi order. The Sufic elements in the country came under the influence of the Ni'matullahi order which until some decades ago exercised a considerable influence in the country, often being joined by the aristocracy and nobility who thereby created a fashion for the intellectual elite. Its offshoot, the Mullah-Sultani or Gunabadi organisation, which has grown in popularity since about the beginning of this century, has become something like a religious trade union of middle class working people, chiefly the lower ranks of government officials.

The eponym of this darwish organisation, Sayyid Jalalu'd-din Haydar, is one of those mysterious saints of popular darwishim whose names, as that of Lal Shabbaz Qalandar of Sehwan in Sind, are widely famed, and yet it is impossible to find any trace of them in Sufic hagiology. The difference between the two is only that while the shrine of Lal Shabbaz is well-known (it was built in a magnificent style by Shahjahans), and is still visited by tens of thousands, the grave of Jalalu'd-din Haydar is unknown. Clever people, as may be seen from many darwish raids, try to identify him with Jalalu'd-din Bukhari (d. 785/1384), buried in Uchchi. But his name was Husain b. Ahmad, he was a strict Sunnite, and had nothing to do with the qalandars in Uchchi; his shrine does not attract the qalandars, and his disciples were probably never called either Haydar or Khakhars.

This is the background against which we have to consider the qalandar and darwish of the Safawid period and later. In our texts we find that the terms qalandar and darwish are used practically synonymously, and that the former has already lost its essential implication of a vagrant darwish. Our qalandars move about singly, and appear to be settled. Begging is mentioned only on a few occasions, as that on which a pious woman distributes to them the only loaf of bread which she had to feed her famished children (T 95-97).

The beliefs of the Khakhars darwishes are not systematised, and consist of the elementary religious injunctions of Shi'ite Islam, the traditional ideas about farisht, special darwish rules and ceremonies, and, in the higher degrees of initiation, a certain amount of information about and rules of the AH sect which they have to follow. They are completely ignorant of Sufic literature, Sufic theosophy and hagiology. The rest of their mental baggage is composed of a considerable amount of memorized poetry, chiefly Shi'ite odes, and what may be classed as "general useful knowledge". Their professional mentality which sees the darwish as the centre of a universe which only exists to feed him, reveals a strange world of inverted values, expressed in a peculiar jargonised language. On the whole the darwish cannot be described as a complete parasite. His arrival in the village is very often welcomed because he brings news and gossip from the outer world, sings good poetry, and renders various services, especially with the aid of his supposed magical and medicinal knowledge. On the whole he provides ample entertainment at a very low cost, thus breaking the monotony of rural life and stimulating interest and artistic taste. It is not therefore a matter for congratulation that darwishism has everywhere been practically suppressed.

In no book, be it Sufic or of other branches of literature, can one find an account of the practices of the mendicant darwishes that does not smack of scoffing or wholesale condemnation. As it is at present, the Khakhars darwish usually carries a notebook in which he himself, his murshid, the spiritual instructor, or any one, writes down the rules which he should learn by heart, various
pieces of religious information, poetry, etc., which he keeps secret from the uninitiated. They even insistently spread the belief that the unauthorised person who peruses or even keeps such a risāla, will be inevitably affected by great misfortunes. On the sudden death of its owner it should be handed to his murshid, and, failing this, to any darwish, or simply buried with him. To obtain such a risāla, especially an original one, is a very difficult achievement, costing quite a lot, for it necessitates long and generous propitiation of its owner.

An examination of the contents of such a risāla may sometimes bring to light instructive examples of what may be called “darwish memory”. For instance (T 198) amongst the “sultāns of the four qāpī” (qāpī, Turk., means door or gate), the sultān of the qāpī of tarqat is a certain Shaykh Faḍl. From what follows, it is obvious that the person referred to here is the founder of the Ḥurūfī sect, Faḍl-al-lāh of Astarābād, executed by Tamerlane’s son Mīrānshāh about 800/1396. His disciple, the Turkish poet Nīsīmī (flayed alive in Aleppo in 820/1417), is mentioned further on. Thus the almost illiterate darwish has memorised these names, and kept them in his memory for over 500 years, having no idea as to who the saints really were.

But in darwish practice one may find relics of a far more distant past. According to custom, a darwish, entering the presence of his murshid, or any darwish senior to him in rank, must take off his shoes and stand in a special devotional pose called qāpī or gubān. He has to place the big toe of his right foot upon the big toe of his left foot, and, crossing his arms on his breast, must touch the lobes of his ears with the ends of his index and middle fingers. It is surprising to note that the position of the feet, described above, is not only the same as that adopted by the dādphoro or torchbearers, on the icons of Tauroctonus Mithra, but also of the Zoroastrian priest officiating at the yasna (sacrifice). Moreover, it may be perhaps possible to recognise this devotional posture in that passage in the Avesta which has given so much trouble to the specialists in Avestic studies, i.e. Yt. xvii, 3-4 (cf. Z. 114), in which it is said of Rīsh (or Arī, Ašī, etc., one of the wives of Mithra) that she evam-pāsham nidhahatii, “stands one-footed”, i.e. on one foot. It may be noted that technically this posture is called, in Gujarati, amongst Parsi priests, “ek pār”. A clever German scholar concludes that Rīsh was a dancer, but it in reality may mean that exactly the same devotional posture is aimed at7.

There are other interesting contacts with Mazdaism in darwish lore. In the ceremony known in darwish jargon as dīk-dīs (i.e. “boiling of a cauldron”), which is the same sacrifice as that offered at the Ah jam, the cooking of the sacrificial meat (carefully screened from the eyes of the uninitiated) is accompanied by the recitation of a khutba, litany, a lengthy prayer for the welfare of everything and everybody in the world, which should continue throughout the whole time that the meat is on the fire. This, surely, is a complete parallel to the recitation of Vispered at the Zoroastrian sacrificial ceremony.

8 Dr. J. M. Unvala, himself a Parsi priest of Bombay, who several times visited Persia and took great interest in Persian Zoroastrians, told me that, however amazing it may be, that posture is no longer used there in religious ceremonies, – it has been forgotten there while still in use in India.

7 The position of the feet apparently varies. There is nothing surprising in the fact that one often sees on the photographs of various bas-reliefs of the Tauroctonus Mithra that one foot of the dādphoro does not touch the other. This may be an error of the artist who, as a rule, probably never belonged to the initiated. There is another obvious error in many of such bas-reliefs: the dādphoro appear to be indolently leaning on something behind them. It seems to me that from the religious standpoint it must be a grave offence, to show the sign of neglect or indifference to the religious ceremony in which one participates. As to the position of the priest’s feet in the Zoroastrian yasna, I had to rely on the testimony of the initiated, which often differs: some say that only the big toe of the right foot touches the big toe of the left, while the right sole does not touch the floor, contrary to the others who say that the sole of the right foot rests on the ground, as in the case of the darwishes.
The bones of the sacrificed sheep are carefully separated from the meat before it is served to the assembly, and are buried later on accompanied by the recitation of the same prayers as used at the burial of men. We shall return to the matter in the section dealing with the AH sacrifice rites, but here we may suggest some connection with the old Mazdaic ideas which underlie the use of the ossuaria (ostadane) in Central Asia.

When the dir-ush meat is distributed at the assembly, the first share (bakhsh) is placed ceremonially before the candle or lamp in the middle of the sufra, table cloth, and is called haqq-i pdr, or haqq-i Pdr Banyamin. When entering a room after darkness, where a candle or lamp is lit, the darwish salutes the light, saying: *salamu `alay-ka, ya shah-i chiragh*" i.e. "blessing be upon thee, O King of Lights". When a darwish wishes to attain something by his prayers, he makes a vow "dar chillah nishastan", i.e. to carry out a forty day vigil, during which he keeps a fire alive on a dideh, a kind of a portable hearth, which may well be a reminiscence of fire altars. All such relics of the worship of fire could not be either of Christian or Islamic origin.

At the initiation ceremony the darwish is branded on the upper part of his right arm by burning cotton, with the murshid applying his thumb over the blister. It is usually mentioned as a substitute for an ancient practice of branding the initiates on the forehead, and this recalls the custom which was observed in Mithraism.

These relics of the ancient Iranian religion apparently exceed the traces of Christianity which are also found in the darwish lore, as the pijula at the initiation, referred to above, with its traces of former use of wine, or the great importance attached to bathing (ghusti) at the same ceremony, and various other practices.

Hardly any work on Sufism fails to allude to some obscure Buddhist, or entirely vague "Indian influences". The former are probably quite imaginary, while Indian contacts of the Khaksar darwhises are genuine, but appear to be of no ancient origin. They are most probably due not to any "spiritual fluids" emanating from India, but the most prosaic wanderings of beggars which even a few decades ago, before the great progress of civilization which has found its expression in the barbed wire fencing in the shape of passports, visas, and an unbelievable amount of all kinds of restrictions, sometimes were amazingly extensive.

The secret of such contacts having lasting effect must be sought in the well-known passion of the Indian for all kinds of exotic eminence. This permitted many Persian darwhises, posing as great ascetics and saints, to find lengthy spells of comfortable living before their pretence could be finally exposed; meanwhile gathering knowledge of things as they are in India and even becoming accustomed to them.

All this, however, has never produced any genuine "philosophy" in the sense of a balanced doctrine. The darwish was rarely a teacher of the masses. Even what little he could collect and synthesize from various sources he invariably treated as secret wisdom to be revealed only to those willing to go through a lengthy novitiate. His role, however, was important in a different sphere.

---

8 The ossuaria were never found outside Central Asia. Prof. S. P. Tolstov, in his "On the Traces of the Ancient Khurasanian Civilisation" (Moscow-Leningrad, 1946), summing up his most interesting excavations in Khwarizm (Khiva), mentions that almost every ancient city or village had a special house which served as a repository of the ossuaria. Thus the idea of the preservation of bones may have Central Asia as the place of its origin.

9 The dideh is only used in that particular rite, *dar chillah* (or *dar salah*) nishastan. The darwish who goes through this has to pitch a tent in an open place for this. Usually cemeteries near large cities serve as an appropriate location. In many of them one could see light structures of four brick pillars supporting a roof, chilla-shina or chil-taja, as they are called, which were specially erected for the purpose.

10 The thumb is applied instead of the seal.

11 In 1928 I met in Shiraz a comparatively young darwish who travelled all the distance between Constantinople and Rangoon, in Burma. I have never visited the latter, but, knowing well Calcutta, Bombay and Cairo, could gain an impression from questioning him that he really saw those places with his own eyes. It is worth noting that this travelling was made on begging.
in what may be called cross-fertilisation of sectarian outlook. In order to secure steady financial support in the country, with sharp differences between the religious groups into which the population was divided, the darwishes had to specialize in catering to the needs of a certain definite circle of kindred communities. By moving among these, these “bees of God”, perhaps unconsciously, served much the same purpose as the insects helping in the breeding process of plants, facilitating the contact, mutual understanding, and perhaps borrowing of ideas.

This particularly applies to the all-important process of what we may call “Sufi-ification” not only of the form in which many sectarian doctrines found their expression, but even of Islam itself, as a whole, in the masses. Here also the part of the darwish is that of the popularization. By trying to show himself more educated than he is, he would with the air of revealing “utterable mysteries”, confide various points of Sufic theosophy, which he himself hardly understands, and this, though too little for instruction, would be enough for stimulating interest.

This has great importance for those concerned. It is generally regarded that Sufic form and phraseology, with their well-known ambiguity, were often used by various sects for the purpose of camouflaging the heterodoxy of their belief. It is quite possible that on many occasions the device was consciously used. But it appears beyond doubt that often Sufic interpretations either depended on genuine effort to develop with their help the original rudimentary sectarian theologies, or still more often, the necessity of borrowing ready forms of expression. It is necessary to realise that the devotee of little education, however brilliant and talented, finds immense difficulties in the struggle for the form in which to express his thoughts. And the ample wealth of Sufic literature, even in the shape of crumbs conveyed second hand by the uneducated darwish, comes as the most welcome help.

Thus the darwishes to a considerable extent served as advanced guards of the process of the coalescence of sectarianism and even orthodox forms of Islam with Sufism. At present it is sometimes not easy to decide whether a certain Sufico-sectarian text should be classed as Sufic with sectarian leanings, or as sectarian much influenced by Sufism, and written in a Sufic manner. Prof. H. A. R. Gibb, in a letter, has emphasised the fact that the term frudawati in the Ismaili ethical work Fandiyd-e Jewandavari literally corresponds with the Arabic futawat, the idea on which so much has been written in Sufic literature.

6. Islam and Ismailism.

Even now, after five centuries of Shi'ite domination in Persia, we find a substantial proportion of Sunnites among the Kurdish tribes in Persian Kurdistan. It seems likely therefore that originally Sunnite Islam was the predominating school here, although Shi'ism had also been strong since the earliest period. In view of the illiteracy of the people, however, it would be difficult to believe that such differences were sharp and clear. Most probably, as elsewhere in similar conditions, such popular, “illiterate” Islam, much diluted with relics of old beliefs, local custom and superstition, was fairly flexible, adopting either pro-Shi'ite or anti-Shi'ite attitude under the influence of various political and other factors. In the localities with which we are here concerned we find even a Shi'ite dynasty during the earlier mediaeval period, namely the Hamdanids of Mosul (317-394/929-1003). Their Aleppo branch was subject to the Fatimids.

It is impossible to imagine that the local Shi'ism was of the same variety as the Ithna-'ashurism revived later by the Safawids. Most probably it was to a great extent sectarian. As we have seen above (see p. 18), by the beginning of the viij c. certain Kurdish groups were already converted to Ismailism (“Qarmatianism”), as ‘Abdul-Qahir al-Baghdadi writes, applying to them the abusive term which implies their identity with the Qarmatians), and during the viij c. the Jewish traveller, Benjamin of Tudela, found there followers of the Imams of Amiss. If we take Kurdistan as a whole, and the conservatism of tribal outlook, we may see that during the mediaeval period some tribes could have been Christian,—in fact some still were Paulician
in the sixteenth c. Some perhaps even remained faithful to the ancient Devayrasian Mazdaism. We may suspect this in the case of the manūd Majāz of Ḍabdāl-Qāhir al-Baghdādī, and of Arevordiqa of Gregory Magistros, who flourished about the same time and died in 1058 A.D. (perhaps they were the same as the "Sola Sili" of Nerses Shnorhali, d. 1173 A.D.), as quoted above.

It is difficult to find out to which persuasion the immediate ancestors of the AH belonged. Tradition (T 60-61) preserves a story concerning Shaykh Ḥisā, the official father of Sultan Ṣahāk (a figure somewhat similar to that of St. Joseph of the Gospels). In any case the milieu in which he moves is Islamic, although it is impossible to see whether it is Sunnite or Shi’ite. He goes on a pilgrimage to Mecca, recites the namāz, and thus could neither have been a Christian, or AH, who do not recite Shafāt prayers.

As we are still very far from knowing the AH tradition in its entirety, it is impossible to offer any suggestion about the sequence of religious strata, whether or not it was really Christianity-Sunnism-Islamism, in its darwishized form, and ultimately the "reformed" beliefs of the AH. A point which is beyond doubt, however, is that the general basis of the AH religion, despite various heterogeneous relics of antiquity and Christianity found in it, is Islamic, more precisely—Shi’ite. As is reflected in its tradition, in its spirit and general outlook, it could only have come from one school of Islam, namely that of Nizari Ismailism, and only after its having been reformed at the "Great Resurrection", the Qiyāmat-i Buzurg, or Qiyāmat-i Qiyāmat, which was proclaimed in Alamut in 559/1164. This reform abrogated the Fatimid policy of insistence upon the obligatory nature of both the sāhir and bāṣīn, i.e. adherence to both the letter and spirit of religion, permitting "worship in spirit only", and thus ushering the community into the world of Ḥaqīqat, i.e. fully revealed Perfect, Ultimate, the Highest and all-comprising Divine Truth, which was partly revealed through the Final Apostle of God, and was completed by the Imams whose mission was that of the Mutinim. It was for this reason that the Nizari Ismailis assumed the name of the Abū-Ḥaqq or Abū-Ḥaqīqat, i.e. followers of that Truth. The injunctions of the shafat were not cancelled or rejected, but had to be observed only in their inner, original and spiritual meaning of which they formed external symbols. Under pressure of necessity, for the sake of self-protection against persecution, the Ismailis were permitted to practice the Ḥaqīqat, externally conforming with the prescriptions of the shafat.

With Ismaili rigidity the AH insisted on pure monotheism, Ḥaqīqat, and used various methods to explain the antithesis between the idea of the Oneness of God and the plurality of the visible world. In their somewhat primitive and straightforward way of the illiteracy people they thought that the Deity, in order to reveal itself to human beings, had to manifest itself in human form. Thus comes the doctrine of Incarnation.

It was probably this doctrine which formed the central point of the "reform" of Sultan Ṣahāk, which was prepared both by the old reminiscences of Christian ideas, and the post-Alamut Ismaili theory of the Divinity of the Imam. Both these, however, implied an element of certain ambiguity: there was always the idea of God as being something distinct both from the Divine Christ and Divine Imam. The primitive Kurds entirely removed such ambiguity, making their Incarnation the human form ("dress") of the Creator (Krāhīq or Khātīq) Himself.

It is quite possible that the Ismaili theory of the deified Imam came into the Kurdish milieu at the time when the old Christian ideas still remained fresh in the memory of the people, even under the superficial Sunnite outlook. The theory of the continuous Imamat, based on the principle that the earth cannot remain without an Imam for even a moment, probably evoked much enthusiasm.

---

1 "Writing as late as 1800, Injijian notes that in the modern pashalik of Bayezid there was a tribe of Kurds called Manichaems, by which his informant no doubt meant Thonraki or Paulicians" (Key lxx).
Despite the "reform", the AH tradition amply reveals the spirit, or mentality, which was the basis of such beliefs.

Probably, however, the active policy of centralisation taken up by the Nizari Imams of Arjúḍān, as has been suggested above (p. 19) and the curtailment of the powers of the local ābuṣ, led to the secession of Sulṭān Šāhāk with his supporters. In their opposition to the hereditary Imams, handing their Divine authority from father to son, they made a clever bid to substitute the principle of the hereditary continuity with the theory of periodical Incarnation, modelling it on the Christian beliefs in the fatherless birth of Christ, under the vague plea of a return to the istser-i sābiq sīn qādīm, i.e. ancient and eternal rules (or laws). Those concerned could certainly manage to produce "fatherless Incarnations", without much difficulty.

The same applies to the institution of "angels". Although we have the precedents in Mithra's servants who ride with him in his gadrique (cf. Chapter on relics of solar religion), the Apostles of Jesus, etc., the details of the doctrine of the AH "angels" appear to be of Nizari Ismaili origin. In the Fatimid philosophy the hierarchy of the da'wät, the ḥudṛud-din, are plainly designed as the "extension" of the functions of the Imam, namely of his preaching and instructing (tuštir) activities. There was no hint of such dignitaries being personally concerned with anything supernatural. The post or position of every one of them was a part, or detail, of a Divine institution, but the persons who filled these posts were ordinary mortals.

Quite a different position came about in the Nizari post-Alamīt practice. Now, with the Imams living in strict disguise, control of the community had to be carried through their trusted representatives or agents who received the general Sufic designation of the ābuṣ. The principle of the da'wät hierarchy was not given up, but the system was greatly simplified. Probably for enhancing the prestige of these dignitaries, of the highest rank, theories were introduced about certain spiritual ties between the ḥujjat and the Imam. In further development it was a kind of consubstantiality with the Imam which was claimed for the chief ḥujjat, who was believed to possess no individuality or personal will of his own, thus becoming an extension of the Imam, acting by his will only. He thus became the real "gate", bāb, to the Imam, who could only be approached through him.  

This is exactly what we see in the institution of "angels" in the AH doctrine, whose consubstantiality is expressed in various crude symbols in mythology. Thus Khāwandgūr, the Creator, "evokes" Bānyāmin, takes out Dāwūd from His sleeve, makes Pīr-i Musī from His hair (māṭ), and so forth,—folklore motifs which have parallels in many nations.

Just as the Incarnation is one and the same Eternal Divine Substance, again and again manifesting itself each time in a different "dress" of a different human being, so the original substances (dhāt) of the "angels" become re-incarnated with every Manifestation in a new dīn.

It is a pity that the AH tradition (as far as it is accessible to us) gives us not a single allusion concerning the origin of the "angels", whether they are also expected to come in a supernatural way. Generally speaking, there are almost no references to their personal and family affairs.

This brings us to the interesting, yet difficult subject of metempsychosis, belief in re-birth. Although, as is well-known, allusions to this are found in the Koran, orthodox Islamic theology categorically rejects it as sheer heresy. Apparently the AH belief distinguishes between the Divine Substance, with its consubstantial extensions, not created from nothing, and what they call dhāt-i qurt, "hard, permanent or lasting" substance, zard-gil, "yellow clay", on the one hand, and the rest on the other,—dhāt-i mishmān, passing, not lasting, incidental substance of ordinary men. While apparently the re-birth of the persons of the former category, together with the Incarnation, is essential for mankind and the universe, the re-birth of the ordinary mortals has apparently only  

3 Such ideas appear as already developed in the work of the Mill valleys, the Rawjia-i-tašlim or (Tajumul) by Nasru'd-din Tuqūl (Ism. Soc. Series A no. 4, 1950), text, p. 100. They attain their greatest development by the end of the x/xvi-th c.
III. WORSHIP.

1. Religious Assembly.

The expression "forms of worship" would not suit the AH because they have neither rigid rules as found in orthodox Islam, nor elaborate programmes for religious ceremonies as have the Christian priests. As one may expect from an almost illiterate community without any priestly class, there is much fluidity in the practices which conform with the basic customs more in spirit and outline rather than with the letter,—even if in this case we take "letter" to mean firmly established tradition.

The same element of illiteracy has an important development. In great Christian churches the members of every congregation are fully conscious of their membership to one "church" which is understood as the totality of all individual congregations which in their religious affairs are ruled over by a hierarchy of the recognized religious authority. In Islam the sense of membership to the world brotherhood of Muslims is perhaps stronger than the sense of one's belonging to his congregation. But, as far as we may judge from outside, in the case of the AH it is the jam, i.e. the religious assembly consisting of admitted members which is the basis, the church. The individual members, surely, are fully conscious of their unity with their co-religionists elsewhere. But the sense of priority of their own jam, apparently still closely tied to the hereditary connection and allegiance to the clan or tribe, dominates everything. The jam, "here and now", is understood occumenically. It cannot alter anything in the doctrine, remaining loyal to the "covenant of Banyamín", but also cannot accept any changes from outside, because no such thing as religious hierarchy and even religious authority,—except the Incarnation,—is accepted.

The jam under ordinary conditions prevailing with the rural AH seems to be thoroughly permeated with the spirit of a large patriarchal family. Quarrels and dissensions do of course exist, but the old tradition does not permit them to penetrate the atmosphere of the jam, from which petty mundane affairs are
excluded. The tradition preserves a halo of sanctity around it. It is often compared with Ka'ba,—Jam-i bâsinKa'ba'i haqequ ast (T 147). This comparison does not literally imply the Ka'ba as a sacred building, but refers to it as a symbol of the highest sanctity in Islam. It fully coincides with St. Paul's words (1 Cor. iii, 16-17): "Know ye not that ye are the temple of the living God and the spirit of God is in you?…. For the temple of God is holy, the which ye are". The Deity is invisibly present at each jam, as Sultan Šahâk (T 167) says: "panj nafar to har chand bâshad bakhsh hunand mâ ānâ āhârt, i.e. "wherever from five people up to any number (ritually, as in jam) distribute (any edibles), We are present there". This entirely corresponds with Matthew, xviii, 20: "Whereover two or three persons shall be met together in my name, I am there in the midst of them". This idea is particularly emphasised in the symbolism of various apotheoses in which an enormous multitude of saints who are present or split into a large number of separate jams, each at one and the same time presided over by the Incarnation in person.

Such exalted ideas about the sanctity of the jam, coupled together with tribal mentality, make any offence against it, or what may be called "contempt of the jam", a very serious matter, punishable with barbarian severity. Apparently the lightest punishment is excommunication which implies social death, as in the case of violation of any taboo. Thoughts stimulated by sexual lust during the ceremony are punished with death (as illustrated by the story of Sayyid Iskandar in MinI, 3-4, 115; cf. Appendix II here). This is because events in the jam have cosmic significance, as can be seen from the story (T 82) in which Sultan Šahâk prohibits a member from assaulting an offender in the jam.

Such great sanctity apparently also endows the jam with enormous magical power. Pebbles collected from the jam room, and thrown at the enemy with an appropriate incantation, can destroy armies andwhole districts (cf. T 71-72, 151).

Historically there is little doubt that even if the roots of the jam go back to that remote period which preceded Mithraism, its features, as fixed in the texts so far available to us, at least bear a strong imprint of sectarian Christian, probably: Paulician, ideas. Mithraism also had its "mysteries" which included "communion", a bas-relief gives a picture of it (C 159). But, probably as with everything in Mithraism, this ceremony was greatly adulterated with alien elements: the participants, divided into different ranks, wearing masks and theatrical dress, crowning and roaring, etc.—"behaved as madmen". All this, surely, has nothing in common with the spirit and ideas of propriety in ancient Iranian religion.

In the section on Christian influences in the AH beliefs we have already discussed many possible contacts of the sect with the ideas of the Paulicians whose agapé comes so strikingly close to the jam. The difference, probably entirely related to the varying proportion of literacy, is that while the agapé was not the only form of religious meeting with the Paulicians, in the AH practice such meetings have become valid only if some edibles, however little, are ritually distributed (bakhsh hunand, T 167) as the basic feature. This communal meal has become accepted as a general introduction to every religious ceremony: sacrifice, initiation, marriage, dhikr. It is noteworthy that the Druzes, whose teaching seems to be equally connected with Paulian ideas, have, in the course of time entirely given up the agapé element, and developed that of the dhikr. At their religious meetings, khalwa, no food is served, and the proceedings are solely devoted to the reading of sacred books.

Just as with the Druzes, the AH do not admit the uninitiated to the jam. This includes the nearest relatives of members, their wives, who have not been initiated. Desiring the honour of being the first foreigner to witness the proceedings at the jam, I have always done my best to persuade the elders of communities with which I have come into contact to permit me to watch the proceedings, even from an adjacent room, or from the roof of the house. My request has often met with sympathy and a broad-minded attitude, and many a time I have been close to realising my dream, but always at the last moment opposition has overpowered the more liberal devotees.

The AH have no special places of worship and meet in private houses, by mutual agreement. The entrance and even approaches
to the meeting places are guarded by volunteers. Meetings are held more or less regularly in cold seasons, especially on the nights from Thursday to Friday (shab-i 'jamā'ī) and on the first night of the lunar month (what in India is called chand-rat). In summer, however, the programme is upset because it is trying for a large number of people to sit in a room closed to assure privacy. The jam is attended both by men and women. The stories that women are not admitted are merely white lies told by the AH to combat the usual vile allegations of the enemies. The quorum at which the jam becomes valid is five members (T 167). The jam may be called at any time of the day or night, but in practice it ordinarily takes place at night—shab-i jam.

In the meeting place (ha'yāmā) the members (fā'īfā) sit in a circle, if there are few people, or, more usually, in two parallel rows (qā'ār), men and women separately. At the end opposite to the entrance (sor-i jam) sit the office bearers, while the people of lesser importance are placed at the “lower” end, pā'īn-i jam. The expression kārār-i or bārān-i jam refers to members who for some reason are unable to attend the meeting. The members sit squatted, on carpets, around the sufra, “table cloth” (although there is no table). One or several lamps, or candles, or phū-sūs (a copper stand with several wicks burning sheep’s fat) are placed in the middle of it. Participants in the ceremony must take a bath and don clean dress before coming (T 167). No talking is permitted; all must sit in a dignified way.

The proceedings at the jam, chiefly in connection with the sacrifice (qurbānī) are described in our texts. All such passages have been literally translated, unless forming repetition, and the reader is advised to refer to Part IV, the summary of the contents of the texts.

Office bearers. There are two office bearers in the jam, both elected, i.e. appointed by mutual agreement, the khalīfā and the khādīm. The khalīfā, which means “lieutenant” (i.e. of Pir Bānymīn?), acts as a parish president. He presides over the jam meetings, and recites necessary prayers. It is not quite certain whether in earlier periods he was called pir or pir-i dāllī. The

archetypal pir-i dāllī is Dāwūd (T 79). In many passages we read about the “72 pirās”, while in context they may be parish presidents on a deputation to the King of the World (cf. T 169). In any case the expression pir as a technical term is not used now.

The khādīm’s duties are those of manager and administrator. He distributes the meal, with the help of volunteers. It seems, however, that there is much overlapping in the duties of these two.

In private life, outside the jam, these office bearers have no authority. The khālīfā apparently does not act as an honorary magistrate in settling personal disputes in the community. (This is the competence of the council of the elders). In fact, it often happens that in ordinary life the office bearers occupy a humble position and, are entirely dominated by the more wealthy and influential members.

Quite a different position is that of the Sayyid or ajāq (pronounced ajāq) whose participation in the ceremony of initiation is obligatory. He must belong to one of those recognized lines (already discussed above, pp. 4-7). In fact, there is much in his position which approaches the Paulician idea of the “elect”, with the “dwelling of the spirit of God” in him being legitimately replaced by the Shi’ite sectarian idea of his direct descent from the Incarnation. By no means every community can afford to have a Sayyid of their own—they seem to be not numerous. Already 250 years ago (T 153) provision had to be made, should a Sayyid not be available, for the khālīfā to act in his place. A ruling which is attributed to Sultān Shāhāq himself (T 168)—although of course, it belongs to much later period,—says the Sayyid must always be a man, and not a woman, even of Sayyid parentage. This may prove that the rarity of genuine Sayyids suggested the employment of women-Sayyids. This, however, was rejected on religious grounds. We also find (T 153) that the Sayyid is not a salaried servant of the jam, but receives jayd, donations. This term generally applies in Persia to the alms given to Sayyids.

The Funds of the Jam. Although it is not easy to collect direct information because on nothing are the AH so uncommunicative as on financial questions, it is probable that the management
of the community’s funds forms one of the duties of the khilafa (formerly, pdr.). He receives (apparently as his private share) the skin of the sacrificed sheep (T.153). “It does not matter whether the sacrifice is offered by an individual (qurbān-i khāna) or by the congregation (qurbān-i il).”

Our texts (T.153, 158) mention two different funds, mal-i Dāwūd and mal-i jam which are used to purchase the sheep for sacrifice (qurbān-i Dāwūd and qurbān-i jam), although for some reason not explained, it is prohibited to mix the funds together. We find (T.158) the story of a certain shaykh Rasūl, a wealthy man, who “every year paid from the produce of his fields (az sarā’at-i khād) a hundred tumans (worth) as mal-i Dāwūd in addition to the mal-i jam (ba mal-i Dāwūd... ba ghayr-i mal-i jam).

The mal-i Dāwūd at the time these rules were introduced was fixed at a hundred dinārs per head. The original dinār during the early period of Islam was a golden coin. But by gradual depreciation, it was reduced before the first world war to the value of about one fiftieth of a farthing. A hundred dinārs (“yak sahnār”) was at that time a nickel coin which had a purchasing power approximately equal to one pound of bread. Over the last fifty years, with still further devaluation, the hundred dinār coin has become worth only a small fraction of a farthing.

This microscopic tax was apparently paid monthly, together with the obligatory khilmat contributions in kind (rice, butter, bread and meat). Cash payments in lieu were apparently everywhere allowed, and they probably formed what is here called mal-i jam. Why these funds were kept separately is not clear, but perhaps it made control easier. The khilfas were, apparently, not always men of integrity, as can be seen from our texts. There are many stories of their stealing from sacrifices, or showing favouritism in the distribution of food.

There are two aetiological myths explaining the origin of the mal-i Dāwūd, both of them apparently of recent origin, judging from their absurdity. Our texts (T.151) narrate that the people of Hawrāmān intended to apostatise en masse, and were therefore meted out a terrible punishment. Anyhow (although their village was destroyed), they managed to collect 100 dinārs from each house, and offered the total sum to Dāwūd as commission for his intervention on their behalf. He did his job so well that the people simply did not believe that the catastrophe had really taken place. As with many things in the AH tradition, this Dāwūd’s commission has become a regular tax “in commemoration”.

The other version, MinI, 1-3, is that a man on board a ship in a stormy sea was about to be thrown overboard as a human sacrifice. He appealed to the King of the World who responded by sending Dāwūd, and the latter saved the ship. The grateful travellers threw money to him which he refused to accept and only a “sahnār” piece remained overlooked in the folds of his turban. This, also in commemoration, has become the origin of the tax of Dāwūd. It is merely a fairy tale with a didactic tendency, probably invented at the later Qājār period when there was already a coin of a hundred dinārs, and was regarded as of very little value.

2. Sacrifice.

Before we proceed we must completely forget the loose application of the expressions “sacrifice”, “to sacrifice”, commonly used in various Western languages, in the sense of giving something out cheaply, waste, etc. In the AH beliefs the idea of the sacrifice is strictly defined, and has no implication of this kind.

Of the three religions with which the ancestors of the AH have had connection, namely, Christianity, Zoroastrianism and Islam, only Islam preserves the practice of blood sacrifice, and this only in one particular case, as a relic of the ancient rites of pilgrimage to Meka, made obligatory to all Muslims. It is offered on the 10th of the month of Dhul-il-hijja, which is regarded as a great festival, ‘id-i Qurbān, and signifies the end of the yearly pilgrimage.

The AH sacrifice has nothing to do with the pilgrimage, and can be offered on any day, in connection with different religious occasions. It therefore cannot be regarded as having been taken over from Islam. We have to go centuries back, long before the
WORSHIP

advent of Islam, to find the practice of blood sacrifice much developed in the ancient, unformed Iranian religion, Devayanian Mazdaism. We may at once remember the immense slaughter of cattle in the “hecatombs” of Darius and Xerxes. Mithraic tarabolisa, etc. Even the central cosmogonic myth of Mithraism is connected with the slaughter of the cosmic bull.

As we have seen, by various details which long since have become parts of folklore rather than living religion, the AH beliefs have preserved many relics from that remote time. And yet we see that sacrifice is still surrounded with great veneration, so much so that it may even be treated as a sacrament. All this would be strange and inexplicable, but for the interesting suggestions offered by the Paulician contacts,—or, generally speaking, the contact with any other sect of that type, the “old believers”. Immolation of animals as part of the routine worship was a prominent local feature of ancient Christianity in Armenia and adjacent countries. Church authorities had to fight a great deal in order to exterminate such barbarous usage.

The matter, however, is not as clear as would be desired, because testimonies are only forthcoming from the enemy camp, religious purists, for whom the custom was merely a relic of heathenism. What was mostly attacked by them was the idea that a sacrifice should be offered for ancestor for the purpose of vicariously Christianizing him, and thus improving his chance of well-being in the hereafter. This was called matal, but it is not clear whether there were sacrifices for different purposes. There, surely, must have been, however, and the sacrifice for the vicarious Christening must have been adapted from the old practice to suit the new purposes introduced with the advent of Christianity.

“The Paulicians evidently had the common meal of flesh preliminary to the sacred rite of the Eucharist” (Key clxiv). They did not imply that the purpose of killing the animal was for the expiation of their ancestors’ sins (Key, ibid.), but what is important for us to note is the connection of the killing of the animal with the agapê which preceded the Eucharist. When we study the AH sacrifice, what stands out is not only the absence of the indication of a definite purpose, but also the presence of certain details which surely, originally, had quite clear and sensible implications.

The sacrifice always and everywhere had a definite purpose, — perhaps to bribe the deity in order to obtain a desired object, or to pay a debt for favours shown. In Islam the sacrifice is now often interpreted as an offering of thanksgiving for the opportunity granted to visit the holy places. We may well understand the matal of the ancient Armenian Christians, but the AH sacrifice has no defined purpose, it is simply an act of courtesy which stresses the devotion either of the individual or of the congregation. This fact may well suggest that some detail was omitted, forgotten, or concealed, although the rite itself was retained by the tradition.

We have discussed the stories of the first sacrifice in the chapter on cosmogony. At the first intention to create the world (T 6) the Creator manifested himself in a pearl in which He appeared from the midst of five šúrs (the quorum of a jâm), and they at once engaged themselves in the sacrifice of an animal. Unfortunately, its kind is not mentioned, and also there is not a word indicating the purpose of the ceremony. When it was over, a jâm (nutmeg) appeared from the drop of perspiration on the One’s forehead. The purpose of the nut is also not explained unless we take it as part of the ceremony of the “declaration over the nut”.

The Creator then announced his decision to create 18,000 worlds.

We can clearly see that the person who conceived this myth took the sacrifice to be simply an ordinary part of a solemn religious ceremony, with no independent symbolical purpose. The animal was killed simply to be eaten, and the eating was an inseparable function of the religious assembly.

Very important is the detail appearing in all stories of the sacrifice,—the position given to the foreleg of the animal to be slaughtered. It is that of the posture of the qâf or qalabâng, described in the chapter on darwishism. It must be taken together

1 Cf. T 131 where Muhammad Bek over the nut (sur-jâm) solemnly utters a promise, — or perhaps makes a covenant (qâf or bidâh), — that the AH on Judgment Day will be the first to see the manifestation of the Deity (Sâsâh or).
with the separation of the flesh from the bones (which latter are usually given burial according to the rites afforded to human beings). This may to an extent contain allusions to the vicarious christening discussed earlier. The animal is thus arranged in the posture of a devotee, its flesh is consumed with prayers, and the bones thus sanctified, are buried to rest till the Resurrection Day when the substitute for the ancestor thus mystically created will rise to be animated with his master's spirit. Not, of course, in the form of a sheep, but as a new man into whom the animal has been transformed by prayers. With the ancestors already being Christians, the question may be simply one of expiation of their sins, by magical substitution of the resurrected flesh of the dead sinner with that of a new sinless being.

Such belief in religious magic could hardly have endured at the time when the AH came onto the stage in the XVI-th c. It was perhaps quite genuine in the case of primitive Armenians during the first centuries of Christianity, but its real implication had long since been forgotten. What did linger was the custom in which the agapé connected with the killing of a sheep preceded the Eucharist. With the change to Islam the killing of the sheep could have easily been identified with the Islamic gurban, while its ancient association with the Eucharist probably endowed it with an air of special sanctity. The tradition (T.168) attributes the words urging the community to treat the sacrificial meal with special veneration, "as the blessing of the pure and righteous" (mithi-t abbarr-i-pakân uva rastân) to Sultán Şahâk. It should be noted that the Arabic-speaking Christians use the same word, gurban, for the Eucharist. Thus the ancient Iranian blood sacrifice most probably assumed the appearance of the sectarian Christian pre-sacrificial meal, and later was given an Islamic interpretation. This is possibly how its original and definite purpose became completely forgotten, and it became simply a custom surrounded with special sanctity, and for all practical purposes taking the place of the Eucharist.

It appears that the AH took quite in earnest the association of the Islamic gurban with their killing of the sheep for the religious meal. They applied to it all the injunctions of sharî'at, and in addition retained some old customs. In sharî'at the species of animals allowed for sacrifice are few: sheep, or goat, bullock and camel. There is a question of whether wild animals of the same genus may be used, and the AH emphatically prefer them. On all important occasions we find references to wild animals which come "from nowhere", "from the hidden world", etc., to give themselves in immolation. Kurdistan is not a camel-breeding area, and the Iranians never had much taste for the flesh of camel. In addition, a camel is an expensive proposition, not easy to afford for the poor peasant or nomad. There is therefore no mention of camel in connection with sacrifice in our texts.

Much nonsense has been written about the AH sacrifice. Even cocks and fishes have been mentioned as victims. The fact is that not every animal, even of the sacrificeable variety, killed for consumption at the jam, is a sacrifice. The ceremony of immolation requires the niyâz, definite intention, clearly declared, and special prayers to be recited. In the AH practice the animal should be made standing in the devotional posture of the qâf, described above, before being slaughtered. In the Khâkâr practice the place in which the animal is killed, and its flesh cooked, is carefully screened from the eyes of the uninitiated (just as in the slaughter of animals by the Sikhs in India).

For the actual sacrifice only young, full-grown males, without defect or blemish, and if legitimately purchased from their legitimate owners, whosoever they may be, are allowed (T.168). It is important to avoid confusion in the terms used by the AH in connection with these matters. The meals with which the jam is inseparably tied are supplied by the members. The contribution may be either in cash or in kind, in the latter either in a form to be directly consumed (sweets, fruit, etc.) or requiring cooking.

Offerings are of two kinds: niyâz, which is a generic name for offering, of whatever form it may be, donated by an individual or individuals voluntarily, and khidmat, which is a regular donation, associated with specific periods of time or fixed dates. It is also
voluntary in principle, but by custom made obligatory and uniform to all. Sacrifice, _qurban_, may be either offered by a private individual (_khana_) in connection with an important event in his life, such as initiation, marriage, etc., or it may be purchased, as we have seen, either from the _mali_ Daud or _mali_ Jam funds, by common agreement.

Meat, of course, is not eaten alone; at least bread, vegetables, butter for cooking, etc., are also required at the ceremony. All this does not constitute the _qurban_, and is either donated as _niyaz_, or purchased from the _jam_ funds. Thus when speaking about the sacrifice, one unavoidably has to touch on the question of other forms of offering.

_Niyaz_ means donation, present, and so forth, and is often combined with the expression _nadhr_, vow, or donation _ex voto_, into _nadhr-u niyaz_, which is just the same. _Niyaz-i shakhrana_, or simply _shakhrana_, is also the same. Sometimes we have to read this as _shakhrana_, sweets, which are often donated and distributed at the _jam_.

_Khidmat_ originally means “service”, and here is used in the sense of “obligation”, someone’s “benefit”. It never means with the AH anything like the Christian “divine service” — such an idea does not exist. The basic _khidmats_ are, monthly: a cock, _10 sirs_ (less than a pound) rice, _10 sirs_ butter, towards the entertainment of _jam_, from every house. Yearly: a sacrifice (of a sheep), male, without defects ( _muhur-u nara_); _khidmat-i sikh rasa_, i.e. entertainment during the three days’ yearly festival (amount unspecified). Also _khidmat-i ahli qurban_ ( _I_ could not get any details, — but apparently it is an entertainment held on the occasion of the anniversary of the death of a relative). There are apparently local customary _khidmats_ in addition which may vary from place to place.

The term _khidmat_, usually in combination _khayr-i khidmat_ or _khayr-u khidmat_, is also employed in the sense of righteous actions, _kordar_. Such expression as _sar-i khayr-u khidmat_ _badan_ means “to lead a strictly righteous life.” This has nothing to do with _khidmat_ used in the sense of the form of the meal served at the 

jam, as in expressions: _khidmat _yaksha shad_ (T 139); _khidmat _zabkha shad_ (T 115—was consumed), or (T 148) _khidmat _ma _qurban_ baksh kordard (they distributed the offering and sacrificial meat), or _khidmat, shakhrana, niyaz, qurban baksh kurnad_ (T 167).

In the text we find several descriptions of the sacrifice (T 6, 25, 51, 73, 102, 119, 133), and in some of them (T 6, 73, 165) an interesting detail is found: _az zir-i gilaw-i qurban naqdisna _khir_ _aovardand_ (T 6) meaning: “from below the neck (or throat) of the sacrificial animal they took out the _naqdis_” (which was cooked, served, and distributed in the _jam_). The expression _naqdis_ is not to be found in dictionaries, and inquiries made with highly educated Persians have proved that it is quite unfamiliar to them. It is not easy to see from the context what it can mean. It cannot be blood because it is clear from some other passages (as T 128, 133) that blood was allowed to run as is practiced by orthodox Muslims. It is probable that the term refers to edible intestines. But if this is so, what is here meant by the phrase _az zir-i gilaw, “from below the neck”? Does it imply that only the intestines enclosed in the chest are referred to?

One of the most interesting features of the AH sacrifice is the astonishing tenacity of the idea of the immersion of human beings. Strangely enough, the cases of human sacrifice in the tradition are associated with the latest Incarnations, Muhammad Bek and Khan Atish, and with the Turkish milieu. On p. 128 it is narrated how the followers of Muhammad Bek, seized with religious enthusiasm, insisted on his “taking off the veil from his mission”, and expressed their readiness to sacrifice their lives for what probably was intended as a warlike adventure ( _sar dar rah-i _Merad _mi-dithim_,—willing to lay down our heads for the sake of ‘Ali’). But Muhammad Bek stages the human sacrifice in earnest.

3 The expression _sar dar rah-i ..._ _dadan_ as in this case, obviously implies the sacrificing of one’s life while fighting for ... But in the case of the demand for volunteers to be sacrificed, as in T 112, and of ‘Ali, the implication must be different. Perhaps it is based on a widespread superstition in many Islamic countries that to enable one to important person must be accompanied with the killing of a sheep, or even a bull, and its blood being poured across the road, and the visitor
who are present receive their “shares”, then a prayer is recited, and only then “shares” are given for those who could not attend the jam. This is probably mentioned to prevent disproportionate “shares” given to relatives of those who distribute the food.

Meals served at the jam should not be regarded as merely an opportunity for satisfying one’s hunger. This vividly reminds us of St. Paul (I Cor. xi, 21) who deprecated the practice of coming hungry to the Eucharist, no less than that of coming drunk (Key lxix).

All unedible parts of the carcass of the sacrificed animal (horus, hoofs, and so on, except for the skin) are buried together with the bones which are carefully separated from the meat. The skin becomes the property of the khalaṣa (T 153). The burial of the bones, etc., has no connection with the “resuscitation” (cf. MinI, 209-210, where much confusion has been introduced from the late V. Zhukovskiy’s fantasies). The idea that the sacrificed animal was revived by God really existed, but in Hinduistic milieu (cf. “Collectanea I”, p. 38). The story of the revival of the fish from which only bones were left (MinII, 210, footnote 3) has nothing whatever to do with sacrifice or offerings at the jam. It appears in full in the texts, 164-5, and is probably of Turkish or Asia Minor origin.

3. Initiation.

It is a great pity that while our texts give much information concerning the jam and sacrifice, very few details of the ceremony of initiation are mentioned. This ceremony, “handing over one’s head” (sur supurdan or sur dādan), roughly corresponds with baptism in Christianity and is the symbol of admission to the community. The head of the person to be initiated is symbolically handed to the ḫād Sayyid in the form of a nutmeg. The Sayyid cuts it into pieces and distributes these amongst those present who eat the crumbs. Sultan Şahāk (T 166) explains: “This maydān (i.e. the room in which jam takes place) is the maydān of Murtadā ‘All…this knife (ṭīılm, which also means sword) is a substitute
The symbolism of the ceremony is probably based on the ideas of primitive magic, just as in blood pacts in which drops of blood of those present are mixed with water. By drinking the mixture they become blood relations. Here crumbs of the nutmeg (which really should be the head of the neophyte) apparently play the same part as the drops of blood. The participants of the ātām, by eating these crumbs, probably show their irrevocable acceptance of the new member. Unfortunately, the text does not offer any authentic explanation.

The only description of the main points of the ceremony of initiation, or its renewal, is to be found on p. 165 of the text. The person to be initiated enters and stands “at the bottom” (nā‘in-i) of the ātām, and bows to it. Dāwūd, i.e. ordinarily the āqāq Sayyid, accepts the nutmeg (from the applicant)—this is not clear—and cuts it into pieces (which are probably distributed to the participants by some volunteers), while Banyāmin (i.e. ordinarily the khailja) recites the prayers (unfortunately, we have not yet acquired their text). The symbolic gesture of the applicant, in seizing the folds of Dāwūd’s dress, probably symbolizes the neophyte’s determination to hold fast to his preceptor’s guidance. Unfortunately, this is all. To ask the sectarians themselves is a hopeless proposition. They do not understand the purpose of the questions, become suspicious, and either flatly refuse to reveal their mysteries, or lie unashamedly and deliberately.

1 Cf. Minī, 225–226, where it is said that the nut is cut in two (?) and one of the halves is taken by the person who is officiating at the ceremony (āqāq Sayyid), while another is given to the neophyte. It is encased in silver and used as a kind of a charm, by the initiated person. I have never heard anything resembling this story. Sectarians with whom I have discussed the matter have invariably mentioned that the nut is first cut crosswise into four parts, which are later divided again into smaller parts to provide the necessary number of pieces for the number of participants in the ceremony. It is amazing, how fond of telling lies are the “followers of the Truth”.

2 Minī, 226, mentions the coins specially manufactured in Northern Khuzistan, in Huwaya, and called hawṣu. Such imitations of old silver coins are manufactured not only for use by the AH. Much bigger market for them is offered by the nomads whose custom is to use them for women’s ornaments.

3 In his interesting account of the AH initiation, Gobineau also mentions a handkerchief as one of the objects which the initiate must hand over to the Sayyid. This, as far as I have been able to collect information, is the practice amongst the darwishes, not the AH themselves. The pīr (Sayyid) places the handkerchief on the neck of the catechumen and pulls the ends in opposite direction, as if trying to strangle him. The symbolism of this act is obscure.
The members have to go through repeated ceremonies of initiation probably for the same reason that applies in Ismailism, where the 'ahd, or oath of allegiance to the Imam, is renewed, even officially required to be renewed every month (as in the Musta'lim branch). It is treated probably as a simple and useful means of strengthening religious discipline.

Although the AH are a proselytising community, one rarely hears of any converts (except for the darwishes in the higher degrees). I have been unable to find out the nature of the novitiate, or the type of tuition and spiritual exercises to be undertaken by the catechumen. There would be nothing impossible in the suggestion that no such rules are in existence, and that conversion, if it happens, mostly depends on an outburst of emotion. Sultan Şahak (T 171) warned the community against the hasty acceptance of the neophyte who shows great enthusiasm in expectation of some extraordinary knowledge being revealed to him upon his initiation. The convert, however, begins to feel disappointed on entering the routine existence of the sect, loses interest, and becomes a dead weight in the community.

Terminology of the "nut" is not developed very much. Apparently the javez of the original initiation is called javez-i Shahi (T 75, 80, 84, 166), and that of the renewal initiation javez-i shukrana (T 131, 153). In places where there is no Sayyid, the shukrana nut is allowed to be distributed by the khalifa (T 153). Finally, javez-i yeri, "the nut of friendship (or companionship)" (T 156) is used in the marriage ceremony.

We have already referred to interesting though obscure passages in connection with the javez-i shukrana (T 6, 131). Muhammad Bek before his disappearance "placed a javez-i shukrana, and over it (soz-i javez) uttered" a solemn promise concerning the Resurrection.

A. Festival.

There are only two real festivals in orthodox Islam: that of the sacrifice (on the 10th of Dhul-hejja), the 'Id-i Qurban, and the end of the month of Ramadān. The AH have a single festival of their own, jashm-i Shahi, or 'Id-i Huqiqat, which lasts three days, the 16th, 17th and 18th of the solar month Iṣa, the 6th of March, and the next two days. There are many strange things about this yearly festival. Contrary to the usual claims of immense antiquity for all their institutions, the foundations to which were laid at "the time before time was created", this one was instituted as late as the period of Qirmizi (probably about the first half of the xii/xii century), and was intended to commemorate a rather trivial event. The story as it is narrated (with minor variants), is that at the time of Qirmizi seven members of the tribe Qabalṭas, or Qawarṭas, or Qurṭas, etc.,—great variety of spellings,—had doubts about the divinity of the King of the World, and therefore decided to test him. They went to visit him, but before reaching their destination, they put up in a certain cave expecting that he in his omniscience would know of their arrival and would come to meet them. As a punishment for such insolence they were marooned by a heavy snow storm, and died of cold and hunger. Thereafter, on the intervention of the "angels", they were forgiven and resuscitated. The festival was instituted to commemorate this event.

The details of the story and the date of the festival,—the beginning of March, clearly indicate that here we have to deal with an ancient festival of spring, the resuscitation of the vegetation after being snowbound during the winter, and the legend of the Qabalṭas pilgrims is a rather artificial pretext to give it place in the AH tradition. The late date of its official origin apparently conceals many important circumstances. The AH tradition itself apparently felt this. The name of Sultan Şahak is referred to in this connection (T 112): "The four angels inspired him to institute a festival, and he promised to do this in the dān of Qirmızı". Although there is not a single word about this, it would be easy to surmise that probably originally it was a spring festival connected with the ancient forms of Mandaism. Later it was banned, and, under Christianity, probably combined with the Easter. Later, under the Islamic phase, it was banned as a Christian holiday, together with fasting and many other relics of Christianity. And
only under Qirmizi, when its heathen and Christian associations had become forgotten while the conservative sentiment still insisted on its being celebrated, it was found desirable to restore it under the pretext of the commemoration of an event which hardly had any deeper significance than scores of other similar events.

The description of the three days' celebration of the festival (T. 114-118) is given at some length. It includes much imagery and recurring signs of the growing inner dissension in the community and the loss of the former grip of myth and miracle. The non-sectarian "authorities" (cf. apud MinII, 213-223) believe that it is spent in strict fasting. Both oral and written sectarian materials agree in the idea that fasting does not exist in the AH community except as a form of punishment.

What the outsider takes to be strict fasting, is in reality pre-occupation with religious matters for three days during which the AH avoid coming out of their houses and mixing with the public,—an idea which is obviously quite contrary to the usual holiday activities practiced everywhere. Enough food is collected for the three days of celebration, either by customary contributions (khidmat) or by the individual voluntary offering (niyâz), and the faithful have their hands and mouths full, either eating or singing religious poems.

Whether there are members of the AH community who do fast for three days,—I could not ascertain. But in the fluidity of the AH beliefs and customs it would not be extraordinary if such people really did exist.

5. Various Religious Observances.

(a) Confession. Both personal and public confession of one's sins as a religious act are apparently unknown not only in the official forms of Muslim worship, but also in the Sufic and darwishi practices. In the latter much importance is attached to tawba, repentence, which is understood in the sense of abandoning completely the way of life, by which the repentant was hitherto travelling, and taking the righteous mystical or ascetic path to salvation. It is what may be called "inner conversion".

The AH, contrary to this, have a very archaic form of confession probably conforming to that which existed amongst the earliest Christians, and was preserved by various "old believers" communities such as the Paulicians and cognate sects. Our text (T. 81-83), narrating the events of the period of Sulâfîn Şâfîk, offer interesting illustrations to this. The expression used is gunâh-i gudhashta'i khâd ba gordan giriftan, i.e. "to take upon one's neck the past sin", i.e. to acknowledge (publicly) responsibility for one's evil act. This is done only at the jam, which, however, is considered not to be a people's court of law, but religious body which forgive the crime merely by reason of its being confessed.

"Any one who comes before us to confess his sin cannot expect any objection from us. From whom would the Lord of the Worlds claim deserts on Judgment Day if retribution should be meted out here?" (T. 82-83). Thus it appears that the act of confession automatically leads to forgiveness on the part of the jam, which only listens to the confession and postpones punishment till Judgment Day. An interesting formula of remission of sins is repeated several times: gunâh-kâr hûrûya, bi gunâh bi-nisîn. Here the word hûrûya probably stands for hû-rûza (from Kurd. rihtin, to pour, scatter), thus: "let the sinner disappear, sit shinsless".

It is, however, not quite clear whether this practice is common to-day or whether action is not now taken in cases of serious offence.

(b) Dhikr. At the end of the communal meal, when the official part of the assembly as it were is over (khatm-i jam), and while there is leisure and inclination, some of the participants continue the meeting with singing religious poetry, kalâm, which they call by the Sufic term dhikr. The latter, in fact, implies something different, consisting of the repetition of a certain word or phrase, to the rhythmic movements of the body. This brings the devotee into a state of temporary stupefaction or even idiology in which merely a sense of excitement remains, mistaken for the bliss of ecstasy. The AH dhikr, as far as one can judge on the sectarian's testimony, has nothing in common with this, and consists of "saying" (i.e. singing) of kalâms, i.e. versified sayings attributed to different saints uttered on various memorable occasions. Those
members who are capable of improvisation (gāyanda, mard-i qanf) may offer their own creations. This vividly recalls the early phase of Persian Sufism, the majlis, held by various pirs or shaikhis, technically called jamāt, at which professional singers (qawwāl) gave performances, apparently singing ordinary love poetry. Old hagiological works are full of stories of how a certain line in a song could suddenly affect a devotee by the supposed deep mystical implications dawned on him, sending him into a mystical swoon, or ecstatic dancing.

Such experiences, however, seem not to happen in the AH practice. No music, even the use of the hand drum (tumbak) or tambourine (da'irā or dīrā) to beat the time, are allowed at the jam, and also no dancing, contrary to the well-known custom of the Bektashis.

In the singing of such tristichs, it is apparently the rhythm, and not the varied contents of the poems which brings the participants in the jam into a state of such great excitement that they may grab live charcoal and hand handfuls of it one to another, or perhaps walk on it. It is claimed that on such occasions burns or blisters are not received, which is probably not true. The darwishes, who also give similar performances, use special ointments composed of sheep fat, camphor, etc. It is interesting to note that if such ointment is applied to the teeth, the performer is able to take a piece of live charcoal between them, and, by breathing, fan it till it bursts into flame, without, they assure, feeling pain. This I have personally seen accomplished on several occasions.

(c) Marriage and Burial. It is the practice with many secret and heterodox sects to observe the majority community’s rites at these two important events in one’s life, for the most valid economic and social reasons. Both marriage and burial are certainly connected with the vital questions of the legitimacy of children, legality of inheritance and with other matters which need official recognition. Therefore we should not be surprised when we learn that at least in the later phase, Atish-Begi, of the sectarian evolution, unequivocal injunctions existed with regard to burial which followed the rites of sharī'at (T 153), while in another passage (T 154) it is implied that marriage apparently was not always accompanied by the “breaking of the nut” ceremony (janz shikastan). Therefore, we may infer that although the ordinary ceremony of ajal bārstan according to sharī'at rules was recognized and thought to be quite sufficient for the legality of marriage, those weddings which were accompanied by the “nut” ceremony were regarded as more blessed, with divorce being undesirable (T 154).

Our texts do not refer to various other prescriptions of sharī'at or recognized custom (āda), except—significantly—blood money (khünbaḥā), i.e. compensation for injury or murder (T 152). It is vaguely stated that it is “higher than that fixed by sharī'at”, but the amount is apparently decided after bargaining between the parties concerned.

(d) Taboos. A strict food taboo concerns eating the flesh of the pig. Prcl. Minorsky apparently attached some special religious significance to this matter, and in his work (Min II) pays much attention to the question of whether this or that tribe or community regarded the eating of pig’s flesh to be permissible or not. In our texts it is said to be a great offence punishable by excommunication (although in the degree of punishment there are traces of fluidity and flexibility usual in the AH rules). Even under the latest Incarnations the custom persisted and the taboo was ignored by some tribes: while the Shāhā’īs did not eat pork, the Kūpāsā’īs (who nevertheless were not excommunicated, but merely punished in another way) had no objection to the flesh of wild pig. It would appear that there is no religious basis in this matter, it must be entirely connected with tribal custom. Under Mazdaism and Christianity pork was allowed, but with the introduction of Islam some tribes probably stopped eating it while others whose conservatism proved to be stronger, obstinately stuck to ancestral ideas.

Quite extraordinary importance is attached to another taboo which prohibits interference with one’s moustache (though not the beard). Vague references (as T 171) are made to an obscure “covenant” of the time of ‘Ali b. Abī Ṭālib (probably quite imaginary) which not only prohibits the cutting or pulling of a single hair, but even suggests that if one unwittingly bites off a part of it he is guilty of a great offence which automatically leads to excommunication. It is difficult to see what was really the basis.
of this taboo. As is known, many primitive peoples regarded it as a great dishonour to lose the moustache. But our case may be a relic of much more recent events. The orthodox Islamic practice is to clip the moustache over the upper lip in accordance with the supposed custom followed by the Prophet himself. Perhaps it was a sign of sectarian protest against the orthodoxy which later on became a "isam" of the community.

Another taboo refers to tobacco,—just as with various branches of the Ismailis. To smoke a water pipe, qalyw, is the same as to eat haram, i.e. pig's flesh, which leads to excommunication. This taboo, however, has been much less enforced in modern times.

The conception of haram, i.e. something unclean and defiling the believer, is also extended to the sphere of ethics, especially to offences against the principle of ownership. Unwitting possession of stolen property, of however negligible a value, is not only haram, but makes haram everything with which it comes into touch. Our texts give many examples of this idea in application to real life.

In contrast with this, the attitude towards murder, even to so vile an act as the murder of a small child, is rather remarkably "liberal". Here, as apparently also in the question of adultery, the conception of crime is entirely connected with the principle of the violation of ownership rights. A killed person is primarily considered as the property of a family, a clan, a tribe. In the case of a member of the AH community being murdered it is the community itself whose rights are violated. It therefore can claim compensation or punish the offender.

All this, however, does not form a characteristic and exclusive feature of the AH mentality, and was probably common to mediaeval rural Persia as a whole, which lived more by the customary law rather than by sharat principles. The instructive admonitions of the Pandiyat-i Jwafranwadi (referred to above) show exactly the same mentality, the difference being only in the fact that while the warlike Kurds concentrate their attention on murder and injury, the Pandiyat lays emphasis on adultery or attempts to commit it.

IV. THE CONTENTS OF THE TEXTS.

The Persian texts which are here edited, may be classified into four categories: 1. Miracle stories; 2. Instructive anecdotes illustrating various principles and religious or ethical rules; 3. Prayers and ritual formulas; and 4. Darwish lists of rules, names of saints, sometimes with biographical additions.

All this material is rather chaotically distributed, and an attempt has been made in the preceding chapters to systematize the utilizable information which they contain. The original text, as it is, cannot be perused without careful and detailed study; therefore its full translation would hardly be of much use, it should be scrutinized in the original. Perhaps the only purpose a full translation would serve would be that of assisting the student of folklore and comparative mythology. But such studies pay no attention to detail.

For these reasons, and for the sake of economy of space which is so badly needed at a time such as ours, it has been decided to offer here full translation only of those portions of the text, or separate passages in it, which deal with important matters, or present something original or noteworthy. The remainder has been summarized to give an adequate idea of the contents, without rendering into English all the trivial details. All translated passages have been inserted in quotation marks.

References to earlier available texts have been given wherever required. As mentioned above (p. 25), certain portions of our principal text, the Tadhkira A'la, come very close to Minorsky's text. But many either substantially differ, or sometimes present an entirely different story. All such cases have been noted, and references given to his Russian translation (Min.). In cases of actual difference in versions such variations have been noted.

As has already been mentioned in the chapter devoted to the description of our texts, considerable difficulty is presented by poetical quotations in Gurani and Adharbayjani Turkish because of the utter unsuitability of the Arabic script for Iranian dialects.
MINORSKY'S TEXT OFFERS NO HELP AS GURANI QUOTATIONS COINCIDE ONLY IN A FEW CASES. THEY USUALLY EITHER DIFFER ESSENTIALLY IN PART, OR, AS IN MANY CASES, ARE ENTIRELY DIFFERENT. MOREOVER, THERE IS SO FAR NO DICTIONARY OF GURANI, AND MATERIAL SCATTERED IN VARIOUS WORKS ON DIALECTOLOGY ARE MEAGRE AND UNRELIABLE. FOR THESE REASONS IT HAS BEEN NEXT TO IMPOSSIBLE TO TRANSLATE THEM. THIS, HOWEVER, DOES NOT CONSTITUTE ANY GREAT OMISSION BECAUSE SUCH QUOTATIONS USUALLY EITHER SUM UP THE CONTEXT, OR THEIR MEANING IS MADE FAIRLY PLAUSIBLE IN THE BODY OF THE STORY TO WHICH THEY ARE APPENDED.

A FEW PORTIONS OF THE TEXT OF EXTRACTS FROM DARWISH RISALAS HAVE BEEN LEFT WITHOUT TRANSLATION BECAUSE THEIR REPRODUCTION HERE IS MERELY IN ORDER TO PRESERVE THE CONTEXT OF CERTAIN IMPORTANT SENTENCES IN WHICH THEY APPEAR AT SOURCE.

ALL THROUGH THIS SECTION REFERENCES IN HEAVY FIGURES ARE GIVEN TO THE PAGES OF THE PERSIAN TEXT WHICH MAY BE EASILY PURSUED IN PARALLEL WITH THE SUMMARY.

1. TADHKIRA‘I‘ A‘LĂ.

AFTER A BRIEF DOXOLOGY THE AUTHOR PROCEEDS: "IT IS NECESSARY FOR THE ABSTINENT ONES TO REALIZE AND KNOW FOR WHAT PURPOSE HAS GOD BROUGHT THEM INTO BEING FROM THE STATE ON NON-EXISTENCE. HAS HE NOT CREATED THEM IN ORDER THAT THEY MAY KNOW THEMSELVES? THE FACT IS THAT UNLESS ONE REALIZES WHAT ONE IS ONESelf, ONE CANNOT HOPE TO ACQUIRE THE KNOWLEDGE OF THE TRUTH". /2/ QUOTING HĀFIZ, THE AUTHOR ADDS THAT UNTIL PEOPLE ACQUIRE KNOWLEDGE OF THEMSELVES, THEY REMAIN IN HELPLESS CONFUSION, STRAYING FROM THE RIGHT PATH, OR REMAINING IN SOME UNSUITABLE PLACE IN THE DESERT OF THEIR IGNORANCE UNTIL THE TIME COMES WHEN THE LORD OF LIGHT (ŠAHIB‘U‘N-NŬR) MANIFESTS HIMSELF.


AFTER MORE OF SUCH SPECULATIONS, ALL PURPORTING TO EMPHASIZE THE ABSOLUTE ONENESS OF GOD, THE AUTHOR SAYS THAT SUCH KNOWLEDGE IS THE AIM OF THE PURE (PAHĀN), AND IT LEADS TO REPENTENCE. /3/ ITS PURPOSE IS THE ACQUISITION OF LAUDABLE QUALITIES, AND THESE IMPLY COGNITION (MA‘RĪJAT, OF TRUTH), IN OTHER WORDS, OF BEING A "GNOSTIC" (‘ARĪJ). "UNTIL THOU KNOWEST THYSELF, THOU WILT NOT KNOW THY GOD".

THE AUTHOR QUOTES FOUR LINES FROM "SÂLMÂN", PERHAPS THE WELLKNOWN POET SÂLMÂN SÂWÂJI (D. 778/1376), BEARING ON THE SAME SUBJECT, I.E. THE NECESSITY OF ACQUIRING (SPIRITUAL) KNOWLEDGE. /4/ THIS IS SUPPORTED BY A BRIEF REFERENCE TO THE NATURE OF THE SPIRIT (RŪH), AND THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF NAṢR, AND THE THEOSOPHIC SPECULATIONS ON DIVINE LOVE, THE SUFI ‘ÂSHIQ AS NAṢIRI. /5/ "WE MAY NOW RETURN TO.... WHAT HAS BEEN SAID ABOVE THAT HE WAS ALONE, LOOKED ALONE, TALKED ALONE, AND LISTENED ALONE. THERE WAS NO SKY, NO EARTH, NO ANGEL, NO PÂRÎ, NO HUMAN BEING, FOR SO MANY THOUSAND YEARS, WHILE HE WAS ALONE TALKING TO HIMSELF AND MOVING ABOUT. THEN HE CONCEIVED A DESIRE TO MANIFEST HIMSELF TO ALL BEINGS.

YĀR 2 IS THE FIRST AND THE LAST! O, HE 3 WHOEVER READS THIS BOOK MUST NEVER DIVULGE ITS CONTENTS TO ALL MANNER OF IGNORANT PEOPLE, BECAUSE IT CONTAINS UNUTTERABLE MYSTERIES (SIRṬ`U MA-GŪ)."

1. APPARENTLY THE AUTHOR MEANT A-ḵULĪ BISH‘I JÂ‘AL.
2. YÂR, THE SAME AS DÂY, FRIEND, BELOVED, IS AS AMONGST THE SUFIS, USED AS A SYMBOLICAL NAME OF GOD.
3. Hû (Arab. hû, he) IS USED AS AN ABBREVINATION FOR Hâwâ’I‘LÂH, OR Hâwâ Haqq.
The Creator first created a pearl (durr) in which were manifested five images (ząrat) in His likeness. “By His mercy from (the world of Divine) Might a sacrificial animal arose, and by His mercy water appeared. One of those five persons rose and lifted one of the forelegs (of the animal).” He uttered: “Yâr is the First and the Last, O Truth!” Then he recited the prayer, and (all) exclaimed Yâ Huâ (Hu kashhdänd). They cut the animal’s throat. By (His) order fire was created. They brought the naqašinę  from below the throat, cooked it, and, serving it to the assembly, ām, distributed it, while He (Himself) recited the prayer, and they exclaimed “Huâ”.

Thereafter 1001 persons (ząrat) manifested themselves, and formed an assembly (ኢsembler). They cooked the sacrificial meat (qurbân). By His mercy water appeared, and was passed round, for the washing of hands (charkh gzdindand). From the (world of) Might a table cloth (infrâ) appeared. They spread it, and brought the sacrificial meat to the assembly. One of them separated the bones (from the meat), which was distributed with a prayer. Then from (the world of) Might an offering (niyâz) came forth and was distributed, with prayers. Thereafter the table cloth was removed, also with prayers, water was passed round the assembly, and He recited the prayer. After this He offered the prayer recited on the removal (qabd) of the table cloth.

After this a drop of Light came out on the forehead of one of them, turned into a nut (jâcz, usually nutmeg) and came into the assembly. He explained in His mercy that such was (His) decision (qarrâr) that 18,000 worlds should be created. He gave an order and from (the world of) Might a Charter of the Unutterable Mystery (qâbalâ‘i sâr-i na-ga‘) with 1001 seals in the name of the Lord of the World, and indications of its being issued by the Lord of that nut at its head (min hab-i Șâhid-i in ām der sor-i qâbîlā) came into existence. /7/ Thereafter, in His Perfect Might, He turned again into a single person (ząrat), and that pearl (durr) also disappeared, so that the Eternal Deity remained One and Alone.

70,000 years passed, and the Lord of the World created a (second) pearl, in which He saw Himself in the form of seven persons (ząrat). After this twelve persons appeared, after this fourteen. Then the pearl also disappeared, and the Lord of the World saw Himself as One (nâhîd) in the Spiritual World (‘alâm-i bâfîn)“.

Again 70,000 years passed. He again created a pearl, from the Spiritual World (‘alâm-i bâfîn). He saw in it Himself in the form of 17 persons, after this of 37, later 47, and still later of 72. Then this pearl also disappeared, and He became One and alone.

70,000 years more passed, and he issued an order. A pearl was created, in which He saw Himself among 360 persons, then 44, and then it also disappeared by His order, and He saw Himself One and alone.

Again 70,000 years passed, and by the order of the Lord of the World another pearl was created in which He saw Himself in the form of 70,000 persons. /8/ and then by His order it disappeared. 70,000 years more passed, and the Lord of the World again created a pearl in which He saw Himself among 999 persons and subsequently 124,000, etc.....After this He talked to Himself for so many thousands of years, moving about in order to show Himself to all the creations, producing from His own pure light a pearl in the form of a lamp (qandîl). He by His pure substance in the course of 60,000 years contemplated that which no creation

---

6 This is the position of qazî or qâshâng, see pp. 64-65.
7 This seems to be the name for edible entrails, as explained in the section on sacrifice see p. 87.
8 Niyâz, offering (cf. section on sacrifice, p. 56), here means vegetables or other additions to the sacrificial meat.
9 Another version: the nut was a drop of perspiration of Khâwângâr. The idea implied is that of its not being "created from nothing".

---

In qâbîlā, title deed, and any other legal documents, usually in the form of a scroll, the seal of the authority on which it is issued is placed at the top, as in modern printed forms, and the seals of witnesses or the endorsing authorities are applied below, or in the margins, or even on the back. 1001 seals with the names of God (surely an ibnâs-ashâri idea) refers to the dogma of God’s having 1001 holy names, referring to different attributes of the Deity.

9 Sayrâ, walk or ride for pleasure, may also be read as sâr- on which gives a better meaning: was contemplating that which...
possesses the power to comprehend and which could not be (generally) understood.

At last, in His perfect generosity, He let fall four drops of His pure light, (and they were) Jabr‘il, Mik‘āl, Isrā‘īl, and ‘Azr‘ā‘il, while that lamp became water (?). From that light (?) He created four drops of light in the form of unperforated (i.e. perfect) jewels, one of them being water. All that is now the world was then water. For 60,000 years more the whole world was water, and He moved on that water.

After this He created Sāj-i mār, with the help of which He began to boil water, so that it turned into foam (baj). He then calmed the foam, vapours rose from the water and became clouds, floating in the air, awaiting His orders.

From the air of that water He created wind which would drive the clouds /9/, so that the movement and resting of the clouds depended on it. The wind has the same functions as the spirit (rūh) in the human body. The surface of the clouds was in the shape of a sieve for the purpose of carrying (i.e. distributing) water.

Then ordering the foam to remain steady, He created from it the earth. From three substances (jana‘ā‘ir) He created mountains to serve as the langar, anchor, (i.e. backbone) of the earth, and hillocks for collecting water used for irrigation. The earth was still not quiescent and was ultimately appeased by the promise that it should become the place of residence of saints (awliyā‘ na awliyā‘a), so that no part of it should remain unused for the offering of prostration in worship. And in addition, it was to become covered with flowers.

The King of the World was sitting on the water with His four associate angels (chakhā malak-i muqarrab). /10/ when they suddenly saw the Pure Substance of ḥadrat-i Razbār, the Khatay-i Qiyāmat (Lady of Resurrection). “She brought out from the sea a round loaf of bread (kulācha), and offered it to the King

of the World. By His order they formed a devotional assembly (jāwā‘ir), distributed the bread, offered prayers and exclaimed “Hār!”. Then the earth and the skies became fixed, the skies being that kulācha.”

The author then mentions the creation of the common cosmogonical scheme: the angel, holding the earth, who stands on a bull, etc.

“From a spark of that Sāj, mentioned above, He created fire, /11/ giving it also a place on the earth, so big that it cannot be described, and naming it Hell. From other substances (jana‘ā‘ir) He created the heavens, i.e. the Higher World whose beauty is greater than that of the earthly world. /12/ From a particle (dherra) of His pure light He created the stars, sun and moon, adorning each of these with beauty.” He appointed day and night in order to introduce variety, as also hours, and seasons.

Then follows the well-known myth which tells of the Deity questioning Jabr‘il as to who he is in relation to God, of his errors, and his punishment which takes the /12/ form of roaming the Universe. He comes to a sea and sees some one sitting on a carpet (sajjāda) spread on the water, conversing with the inmates of the sea (bakriyān). In a boorish unceremonious way he asks who this person is and the latter, looking angrily at him, burns his wings, or feathers, and leaves him to float helplessly, until he is pardoned. /13/ When he next has the opportunity of being questioned by the Deity, he gives the right and humble reply, and is reinstated in his high position, of mukhib-i an‘ā‘l, i.e. “reliable informer”.

The Deity then creates /14/ 70,000 associate angels, out of His light, together with houries and ghilmān, and also many thousands of angels of a lower order, firihā‘ (not malā‘kā).

Jabr‘il then asks yet another gnostic question, about the purpose of the creation of the angels and their intended task. The Deity then orders them to go to the earth and bring Paradise (Bihisht) up to the heavens. Their efforts are in vain, for Paradis-
refuses to be moved and asks the Creator the same question, about the purpose of its creation. God explains His intention to create man, with Mika'il as his spiritual guide (rāhbar), Isrāfīl as record-keeper (daftār-dār-i khayr wa sharī'), and 'Azrā'īl to seize his spirit. Jabrā'il (who has not been mentioned in this programme) begins to pray for the cancellation of this plan, expressing his view that the proposed creations would not behave well (īhān nu-kunand). He therefore suggested the appointment of four īdārs who would protect them, /15/ by their ability to be righteous and solve difficulties (mushkīl-dushan).

"After this the Holder of the World and Creator of Man looked upon 'Azrā'īl with the eye of benefaction (fāyda)18, and 'Azrā'īl became split into two parts, one exactly like the other, and from between these parts a drop of light emerged in the form of a loaf of kūlācha bread. The Creator then said: I appoint that person (qārat) who became separated from 'Azrā'īl to be the Lady of the Resurrection (Khūtān-i Qiyāmat), who will on the Resurrection Day be the helper of human beings. I appoint 'Azrā'īl to be the seizer of the souls of men, and Razbār to offer them mercy (rahmat). And this kūlācha will be for their beneficence (īhān). This is why the substance (nayik, lit. ferment) of the earth and skies comes from that loaf; it is the source (mīn) of souls (ma'din-i jān-hā)17. As thon hast prayed to Me in such a humble way, I swear by the truth of My own Oneness and by My beard (janāl-i mardān), that I will grant to thee position and standing (manzil wa ma'awa) due to those who search for the Truth (ahl-i takhlaq) and are invariably sincere (yakrang-i ikhlāṣ), as will also be granted to the 124,000 complete seeds of prophethood and chosenship."

Then the 'Arsh (i.e. Throne of God, apparently a slip instead of Paradise, mentioned above) takes the place appointed to it. The Deity then orders Jabrā'il to bring a handful of dust from the earth;

18 Perhaps gāhā, setting, which would be more in tune with the nature of the angel intended for the gāhā āwāyāt.
19 The word īsām, doing good, conferring an obligation, benefiting, is here apparently used in a passive sense, of being benefited (?)
20 The sentence is not quite sound, and the last two words seem to be unattached.

MANIFESTATION II

He is about to take it, but the earth implores him not to do it, so he returns to the Deity empty handed, and explains the reason. /16/ Mika'il and Isrāfīl are then sent, with the same result, and ultimately 'Azrā'īl who ruthlessly discharges his duty, and brings the dust into the presence of Shāhāb-ḥār. The latter confirms his appointment of 'Azrā'īl as the Angel of Death on account of this proof of his mercilessness. The dust is handed to Jabrā'il who kneads the clay, and makes Adam's figure in "the image of God", i.e. in the likeness of the Five Al-i 'Abā. The symbolism of limbs and features of the face of man is explained in the Shi'i manner.

Jabrā'il fixed the light of Muhammad the Prophet in Adam's forehead and ordered the soul (rūḥ) to enter his body which it refused to do until it noticed /17/ the light of that Saint. The Deity orders that Adam's spouse shall be made before he begins to move. This is apparently done in the most orthodox Biblical way, from the left side.

Ultimately, Adam awakens, and the story turns to that Coranic myth which recounts the prostration of the angels, and the refusal of Iblīs. The latter is not called by name here, which is quite significant18, and is vaguely designated as Rānā's rūḵ, the "Expelled and stoned one". It is probable that the hurried narration of the myth here is not unintentional. The story at once switches to the period of the Manifestation of 'Alī,

(Manifestation II)20

At the time of his creation Adam received a prophecy from Jabrā'il to the effect that a guest would come to him, a princely horseman, with narcissus-like eyes and his beard divided into two halves20. He was to be accompanied by a darwīsh on foot, carrying

18 The name Iblīs does not appear in this text, and the word Shayṭān appears only once (p. 156), "colloquially", as the cause of temptation.
19 There is no division in the text and no heading here.
20 "Narcissus-like" simply means large. The beard, divided into two parts, is attributed to Rusam, and has become an invariable accessory of the figure of a popular hero. Cf. the portraits of the first Aga Khan, Ḥasan-'Alī Shāh, or of Sayyid-i Khārdashtī in Minū, plate facing p. 248 (although the partition here is not quite clear).
a darwish axe (tabūrān) on his shoulder. (When this took place), Adam met his guest, took the reins of the horse, and helped him to alight. The guest announced: “Sometimes a slave, sometimes the Creator, it is We, it is We!” He stayed the night, and left in the morning. Adam asked: “Where are you going?” The answer was: “Let it be our arrangement (iqnār; perhaps qarār would be better); I shall go, and shall also come again” (or: I shall also come to Rām, Asia Minor). Then he went.

During the period of Adam, the time when Salmān (Fārsī) was a Christian (Khāch-parast), the dawr of the Gospel (İnfi) was manifested. Adam told Seth (Sītī) /18/ that a guest of such description was coming. And Seth, told his successors, who told one another, until ultimately this prophecy reached Muhammad the Prophet. Salmān, impatiently awaiting its fulfilment, went wandering in the desert, until he really saw the Horseman in the Dāshšt-i Arzhan. The Horseman promised to meet him in the period of Muḥammad Mustafā, in the house of Abū Ṭālib, and this was fulfilled after three hundred years. This was preceded by a significant event: once when the Prophet went to hunt, a lion came out of a grove, and, paying no attention to any one, laid near the Prophet a baby girl, who received the name Fāṭima bint Asad (i.e. daughter of the lion). This was the future mother of ‘Ali. The Prophet revealed this mystery to his apparent cousin, but kept it from the people in order to avoid unrest. /19/

Then follows the story of Salmān and ‘Ali, who, while still a boy, eats dates and spits the kernels upon Salmān who is wounded by them and protests. He is ultimately made to recognize the Horseman whom he met 300 years before in Dāshšt-i Arzhan. Many Shi‘ite poets have rendered this story in verse.22

Then /21/ follows the detailed story of the Mihrāj, the Prophet’s ascension to heaven, which also forms the favourite subject of many Shi‘ite and darwish poems. The Prophet sees ‘Ali everywhere in the most different forms. On pp. 24-25 there appears the usual darwish myth of his visit to Gumbad-i Khadīr, a door-less and window-less cupola (sky) into which the Prophet is admitted merely as the humble servant of the poor (kābd-i ṣugār). He offers the Chihīl-Tan, “forty bodies”, a cup of water which he sweetens with the help of a single piece of raisin, which he finds by chance in his pocket, a kind of darwish Eucharist, sharbat-i tawākhd.23 Here again the symbolism of numbers enters. There were “forty bodies”, but the Prophet looks and sees 1001 of them.

Then /25/ the story of sacrifice (qurbān) is again repeated. From the hidden world (‘ālom-i ghasb) a sacrificial sheep came up. They sacrificed it according to the previous ancient law (qānūn-i qadīm wa sāqīq) which has already been mentioned above, and distributed it, with prayers, and the final “Hā!” The Prophet looked and saw that those persons (ṣarār) disappeared, and only one remained. The Prophet took leave of him, saying (as a darwish): Haqq dāst! The person answered: Yār dāst!

On his return (p. 26) the Prophet heard the story of his Mihrāj from ‘Ali, from the beginning to the end, “as also a description of the Rūz-i Saranjām, i.e. the Resurrection (†), which is an unutterable mystery. And this Saranjām, i.e. Completion, Ma‘āmā and the Prophet instituted (qarār farrānd) for the “People of the Truth” (Ahl-i haqiqat). I shall explain this for other people who aspire to the degree of the haqiqat.”

“Once Ḥadrāt-i Amin, i.e. ‘Ali, was sitting in the mosque of Kūfā, and his associates (Yārān)24 were all in attendance. It was the wish (rā‘y) of the King of Saintliness that he should make clear and open the unutterable mystery of His Substance and Oneness to all the followers of the Truth (ahl-i Haqq) and to those who were in search of the degree of it (maqām-i haqiqat). This was in order that the ahl-i haqiqat should know the path, practice,

22 Dāshšt-i Arzhan, as it is usually called, is a thinly wooded valley between Shiraz and Kašan.
23 The expression Yār, friend, is used in these texts in the sense of member of the AH community, particularly when speaking of the associates of an Incarnation.
and custom (rīh wa rasm wa ašab) of their religion, and should never stray from them. Therefore the King of Saintliness stretched out his blessed hand towards the sky, and after some time the scroll of a charter, luminous as the sun, came into his blessed palm. He took with his blessed hand a qalam (reed pen), and wrote down on the scroll what was an unutterable mystery (nir-i maqāb). An old woman, belonging to the AH community, who always had a bowl of fresh curd (mār-i nau-bar), which she used to bring /27/ to the King of Saintliness, again brought it to him then. He rolled the scroll, and, pressing with his right shoulder against one of the pillars of the mosque, he raised the pillar with his left hand, and placed under it the bowl and the scroll, which he laid over the curd, thus making both hidden. In addition he said: “After the lapse of sixty-six years a person will come from the country of the Faylī (Lurs). He will thrice bring down the sun from the sky upon the earth. This person will in the same way bring out my "sign" (i.e. the bowl and the charter). We are he, and he is we (i.e. I and he are one and the same person). Obey all his commands.”

Having said this, he rose and walked out from the mosque, intending to “change his dress” (maqīash be jāma’i digar wistād), i.e. to disappear, and later come in another manifestation.

The author then proceeds with the story of the death of ‘Ali who bids his sons, Ḥasan and Ḥusayn, to hand over his corpse to an Arab who will come the next day for it, and not to follow him. Ḥasan disobeys these orders /28/ and pursues the Arab, only to find that the person who rides the camel and the person who leads it are one and the same. Therefore the famous sword Dha‘l-hqār was left to Ḥusayn and his posterity. All this has also been made subject of Shi‘ite poetry./29/ (Manifestation III).

SHAH KHUŠHIN.

“The events of the manifestation (jāma) of Shah Khūshin, i.e. the third jāma, which the King of Saintliness was pleased to grant, under the name of Shah Khūshin”.

The narrative opens with the event of the miraculous birth of Shah Khūshin by Dā Jalāla, a daughter of a tribal chieftain, here called Mīrāḏ Amānā (i.e. Amān’s-lāh), and in Minī—Mīrāḏ M’-nā, probably to be read Mu’-nā, because m’-nā does not make sense. Mu’-nād-din was not a very rare name during the Safavid period. The -d at the end is the suffix of the vocative case. The use of such “vocative” surnames, especially as pen-names for poets, came into great fashion under the Safawids.

Dā Jalāla, a young girl, a virgin, conceives from a particle of the sun which has penetrated her nose. Her father orders her brothers to destroy her, but this is miraculously prevented, and ultimately a son is vomited by her, like a ball of shining quick-silver, Shah Khūshin. All this is narrated with many details, and accords very closely with Minī, 19-23, but is never identical with it. The poetical quotations are different.

Kākā Riddāf [28] sees the sun brought down three times, and rushes to the scene, to find the luminous baby playing with it. All this occupies pp. 29-37 of the text. The dialogue, in Guranī verse, and occasionally in Persian, varies considerably in both texts, is full of mistakes, and therefore very difficult to translate.

(P. 37. cf. Minī, 23-24). Rūm, i.e. Osmanli Turks, invade the tribal territory, causing panic. Shah Khūshin, while still a boy of five, mounts a seven-days-old colt and utterly defeats the invaders. (P. 38). Now begins a series of Shah Khūshin’s contests with various daḵwār-kūrs, which may be translated as “pretender”, a bogus religious leader. He first visits a certain Kaka Aḥmaz

[28] Riddāf is an Arabic word meaning a mantle or cloak. It is obvious that the name is an abbreviation of Riddāl, “one wearing a mantle”, as may be seen from a poetical quotation on p. 36, top, where it is used as a pen-name. It is the same as that in Minī, 23, and consists of a popular quatrain (shar-bahī), 14 syllables to a line: "A Princely Horseman has appeared from behind the mountain pass. — A good horseman came from Balkān to Awt (Awānā). — He sweetly said to Riddāl: 360 years. — I was an expert hunter. (Now) I have seen my game, and fulfilled my desire".
who challenges him to be weighed. The one who is heavier is to be the winner. Shāh Khushin makes Kaka sit on the scales, laying his own shoe on the other side, and it outweighs the Kaka. In this way Kaka is reduced to obedience. Shāh Khushin pronounces several kalamz, in mixed Persian, some of them having identical beginnings. It is not impossible that these represent the fragments of a long religious poem. In MinI, 25-26 the story is the same, but the text differs greatly.

(P. 39). Shāh Khushin visits another “pretender”, Bābā Buzurg who carries out an advanced feat of magic by turning himself into a wild ass (gūr) in a herd, but he is recognized, and reduced to obedience. Cf. MinI, 26-28, which has an interesting addition: Bābā Buzurg presents Shāh Khushin with two Chines children who become the progenitors of the tribe of the Delfs (Delfān).

(P. 40). They now set out on a visit to a certain Ḥasan-i gāw-dār, i.e. “the owner of oxen”,27 who is expecting this favour. This Ḥasan is represented as a plain farmer who never tells a lie. The expert magician, Kaka Ahmad, turns into a stag (marāf), and, under the pretence of being pursued, asks Ḥasan to save him. The latter unties one of his two “mountain bulls” (gūw-i kāhī),28 and harnesses the stag. When the pursuers arrive, and ask him where the stag is, he points out the game, being unable to tell a lie. He invites the party to his home and serves them, at the bidding of Shāh Khushin, with fruits from his garden, although it is past the season.

(P. 41). The King of the World comes to the Wāmarz pass, and there distributes, some wālāyats, i.e. districts, so that each (of his subordinates) will know his place. Many people cherished

high hopes as to these (of deriving much income) to spend. (This obscure passage apparently means that Shāh Khushin replaced the unworthy leaders (probably religious) with new ones). Then /42/ he goes to call on Bābā Faqī (i.e. faqīh, lawyer; he is more often called Kure Faqī, “the son of a lawyer”) who resides in the gorge of Rīzhāb (not far from the Tāq-i Gīra on the Khanīqīn-Kerman shāh route). He first sends Kaka Redā, and the latter exchanges some kalamz in Gurani with the “son of the lawyer”, and (later on) Shāh Khushin himself participates. The text of these poems seems to be very much corrupted in the copying. It is at this juncture that Shāh Khushin pronounces the quatrains, a part of which has been quoted above29. Its first half is also very interesting:

Faqīh, wa Khudā nistīn balt, Khudā’īn.

Ašī-i-mān khur-’en, zha khure zō’īm.

i.e.: “Faqīh, we are not God,—yes, we are God. Our origin is the sun, we are born from the sun.” The next quatrain is often quoted by the AH:

Mā’īm, mā’īm, mi-nandīm ki mā’īm!
Qadd basta, miyantarāch chān mīy-im.
Dar an khayna ki Haurū bā Adam bādand
Mā bādīn dū-jā, akhir ham mā’īm.

i.e.: “This is we, this is we, we shall prove that this is we! Girded, but empty inside as a reed30. That tent in which Adam and Eve resided, we visited, but even at the end (of the world) we shall be.”

(Pp. 44-49). The next comes the story of Shāh Khushin’s visit to Bābā Tahir whose grave is still shown in Hamadan, as has been discussed above31. Cf. also MinI, 29-33, where the text differs not only in its prose, but often in the (popular) quatrains in which the dialogue is composed. The whole spirit and tone of this story is in sharp contrast to the preceding episodes. A strange element is that of “temptation by hidden treasures” (T 46, cf. MinI, 31).

---

28 Bābā Buzurg was apparently a darwīsh saint in Luristan, not far from Borūjird where his grave is still visited by devotees.
27 V. Minorsky translates gūw with “cow”. But no one uses cows for ploughing, and the AH never sacrifice females. Besides, all over Persia gūw means an ox, or bull. The cow is mādāghū.
28 What kind of an animal is this gūw kāhī? It appears very often in these texts, but I never heard of it in any part of Persia. See above, p. 33.
29 See the section on the Origin of the Sect, p. 11.
30 This means: although the exterior of the reed is divided into sections, it is one in its eminence inside. The idea is of one and the same Substance assuming different forms, “dress”, jāman.
31 See pp. 9-10.
This is not of the same origin as the preceding miracle tales, but smells of that artificial imagery which one finds in Persian fantastic romances. On the whole one is left with the impression that it is of late origin, and the production of an amateurish author.

(P. 49. cf. Min.I, 33 and cont. 37-38, the two versions differ on many points). Shah Khushin returns from Hamadan. Having descended from the main road, through "the pass of the Pir," he arrives at the "hill of the nine-hundred". He orders Kaka Reda to (revive and) bring forth the dead man who had passed away 666 years before. Kaka Reda does this, after reciting a number of Gurani quatrains, apparently composed from the original stichs. The Pir replies in the usual Persian village char-bayts, beginning so typically with "agar abi kasham...", the opening of hundreds of similar poems. The resuscitated old man, however, requests permission to remain in his grave, and is dismissed. It is difficult to say what the point of this story of such an aimless miracle is, unless we suppose that it formed a part of another story with more obvious theme.

(P. 50). After the re-burial of the resuscitated old man the text abruptly announces: "and he (i.e. Shah Khushin) promised (to appear) to Pirali (bidding him) to remain in the district (mutuk) of Mawrdin22, watching for the men (mardan) who would be coming to him". In Min.I. 40, some other events precede this (omitted in this text). Pirali is qualified as sahib dhati, i.e. most probably, a minor re-incarnation of some cosmogonical symbol. About the term 'ali, which in Arabic means high, see above, p. 56. As we shall see, this Pirali is a rival of Bayamin, and his adventures are on a grand cosmic scale. Perhaps there are in this some crumbs of a parallel mythology, developed by a rival but defeated party. This is why Pirali's story abruptly intrudes, and is as abruptly discontinued, being left unfinished.

(P. 50. Cf. Min.I. 40, which gives a different version). The King of the World goes to Kufa, and enters the mosque. Just as promised by the Shah-i mardan, i.e. 'All he lifts the pillar and takes out that bowl of curd surmounted by the charter of the unutterable mystery. He unfolds it and shows it to his associates (alida-dorun)23. It has at the foot twelve seals of Imamah. He says: "I am Shah Khushin, the Lord of Heaven and Earth". There is (on the charter) the signature and seal of the King of Saintliness ("Ali), khaffi (vat) mohr.

(P. 51). Here begins the first in the series of apotheoses which conclude the narrative of each Manifestation (they are not found in Minorsky's text). All of them are based on the same programme, and even the same words are used to describe the different parts of the performance.

The King of the world gave an order, and a ram appeared from nowhere (the hidden world). They sacrificed it according to the previous ancient rules. The King of the world was sitting alone in a tent. Then men looked and saw that there were 1001 persons (gijat) in the tent, all in the likeness and shape of one another. (Shah Khushin) stretched out (his) hand of Divine might in the direction of the sun, and brought down the charter of 18,000 worlds35, which was of the colour of the sun and of the light of Divine Might. At its head stood 1001 seals with the name of the Creator. He exhibited this charter to the men, thus revealing to them his Pure Substance. Thereafter they again saw that the King of the sea and land was sitting alone in the tent.

(P. 52). Then follows an interesting story (not in Min.I). A dhimmi36, a Christian (in this case), a white-bearded man, with

Or: in his estate in Mawrdin or Mordin, which is situated near the present Perso-Irak frontier, not far NW of Pardiwor.

22 The term alida-dorun, the "owner of the eyes" is apparently a Persian equivalent of the Arabic ayba-kebur, ayba hubur, i.e. the wise person who sees beyond the mere appearance of things.
23 As has been mentioned above, the seals under an official document are those of witnesses, serving as endorsement. The inconsistency implied by the mention of the seals of the Twelve Imamah can obviously be explained as colloquial usage, under modern Persian influence.
24 The charters, qibla, which are so often referred to here are obviously conceived as the documents certifying the rights of the possession, landed property title deeds.
25 The term dhimmi, meaning a Christian or Jewish subject of a Muslim state, who pays a special tax, is a purely legal one which is rarely used colloquially now. The story is very interesting in its implications: does it mean that Christians could also be present at the AH gatherings?
two sons, came out on seeing Jesus in Shāh Khūshin’s suite. He (Jesus) had a star on his forehead, and this is how they recognized him. They turned to Jesus, but he ordered them to apply to Shāh Khūshin, imploring him to admit them to haqqāt. He refused, saying that they had eaten prohibited (kārūm) flesh. As they insisted, he ordered firewood, a big fire was lit, and he invited the three of them to step into it in order to enter haqqāt. They entered and were burnt. Their ashes were collected and covered by a bedsheet. Then the King of the World summoned: “O, Abū Nūy (the name of the dhimmī), get up!” And the three men rose, safe and sound, thus joining the haqqāt.

(P. 53. Cf. MinI, 40-41, which has slight variations). It seems as if this story is a continuation of the miracle in the mosque of Kūfa. “Thereafter the King of the World said: Someone, accompanied by seven others, will come and sit on the peak (mil) of Dirżawar. He will read for you what had been written in the charter, and will ritually distribute to his associates the bowl of curd, putting into it his fingers also. He will reveal the names of the men (i.e. appoint fāls in various districts). Obey whatever he commands because he is I, and I am he.”

Bānyāmīn, Dāwūd, Mūsā, and others wept profusely on hearing this. The King of the World settled everything (ṣqrāj fārmūd) with Bānyāmīn. (This is the first time that the “angels” are mentioned in the text. There is no mention of Kāk Kālā here. Perhaps this is nothing but a stereotyped passage, with the usual disregard to anachronisms.)

Pic ‘Ali (as his name is written here), who was Ṣaḥib dhār (see above), and who was a resident of the Mawrdīn district, was permitted to return to his home. Thereafter the King placed the bowl of curd, with the charter of the unutterable mystery, upon the rock of Hūrin (Ṭashī-i Hūrin or ʿHūrī) 37, which is a hundred thousand yards high. Then the King of the World conceived the desire to ride over the river. His associates stood while he himself rode upon the (surface of the) river (bahr) 38 and began to play chūngar (polo). When he whirled round on his mount, dust rose from under its hoofs. Then he ultimately disappeared from the sight of the followers.

These impatient people jumped to the conclusion that the King had been drowned in the water. They then dispersed.

Note: It will be useful to add a few words on the stories which belong to the manifestation of Shāh Khūshin in Minorsky’s text, but are not found here:

MinI, 18-19. The temptation by a woman of a Guran, Rustām by name, who safely withstands it, and receives the rank of fatr as a reward. It is a well-known motif in Sufic bāโกfī, and may have nothing to do with Shāh Khūshin, being associated quite incidentally with him. Cf. p. 61.

MinI, 33-34. A condensed version of a miracle with a certain tribal chieftain, Khusraw. It is narrated in detail in this text under Sulṭān Saḥāk, pp. 77-78 (Khusraw Khān Barzanja, who becomes brother in law of the Incarnation).

MinI, 34-37. The story of a certain enemy of the King of the World who was turned into a pig. The general style of this story is not in keeping with the other tradition about Shāh Khūshin, and it may be misplaced.

Another story, more in tune with Shāh Khūshin’s exploits, tells of him turning into a white falcon (MinI, 35), flying in the

37 This is yet another sacred rock, often mentioned here. There is a village Hurin in Iraq territory, lower down on the left bank of the same Sirwan (or Diala) river, about 30 miles South of Dirżawar. The only Hurin mentioned in Persian territory is a small village North of Kermandah in the district of Bīlwa (Farhang, V, 143). MinI, 38, regards it as the same as Seng-e-Dīzār (i.e. Dirżawar), as he writes.

38 Here bahr, apparently a “learned” Arabic word for the usual Persian dārā, which can mean either the sea or the river. Obviously here the same Sirwan river is intended.
direction of Yafta-Kuh. Then he again appears amongst the 900, testing the firmness of their faith. He behaves like a madman (acting as Shams-i Tabriz in the well-known legend). The whole crowd goes to Hamza Bara-Shahi. Then the King of the World rides away on a horse (this sounds like a version of the story, narrated further on about Muhammad Bek).

The King of the World visits Babā Yādgār Sarānakī (?). The story of a madman (also narrated in connection with Muhammad-Bek further on in this text).

The King of the World (MinI, 36) orders Kaka Reda to bring a certain unnamed unruly man who is feared by the whole district. When the Kaka goes to him, he comes to meet him with mace in hand. The Kaka catches him by the belt, puts him into his sling, and throws him high. He disappears for a time, and Peter falls down. What is significant, is the end of the story: the AH of that district saw this, "understood that it was a Divine mystery", and buried the body, raising it above a mausoleum, and giving to it the name (of the tomb of the) Falakī, i.e. Celestial one. All this accords well with the idea of Shah Khushin's exploits which generally constituted a campaign against local independent darwish and other petty religious leaders.

MinI, 37 and 38-40. A strange story in which Shah Khushin goes with his 900 to Shīr-Shāh (it is not clear, whether this is the name of a rival). He pitches his tent amongst musicians (?). Their instruments cannot be tuned. On being sent to bring someone who can do this, Kaka Reda finds a dead man, a dumb-mute, Balashit, who is revived, and does the work. Shīr-Shāh expresses his submission. The rest (of his following) remain obstinate, and the King of the World sends Mustafā-yī Dāwudān to punish them.

Yafta-Kuh is also in Luristan, not far from the mausoleum of Babā Buzurg. This story therefore belongs to the cycle of Shah Khushin's exploits in that locality.

...
reported this to his friends. They then began to implore Banyāmīn to try. He also met with the pāshām who vexed the saint as much as he could. Yet Banyāmīn ultimately got through and politely stood aside until the conversation had come to an end (mohi gārdid). He conveyed his message to the King of the World who said /57/ that he was dissatisfied with human beings who were treacherous, and preferred the society of the inmates of the sea. Banyāmīn insistently implored him to come, and the King of the World agreed on the condition that he, Banyāmīn, would be a pīr, and he, the King of the World, his disciple (fâlib). The reason was that while a fâlib must carry out every order of his pīr, Banyāmīn obviously could not carry out every order, while the Deity could. Banyāmīn was unable to oppose such excellent logic, and the King of the World decided to return. He ordered the seventy two pīrs to disperse to their homes, while Pirālī was to remain at a certain place in Mulk-i Mawrdin, watching for his arrival. When the "aroma" of the King of the World came as a breeze of dawn, he was to take with him Dāwūd and Mūsī and go to the house of Shaykh 'Isī Bahāl (i.e. Bāh-‘Alī?) /58/. Banyāmīn returned and conveyed these orders. The 72 pirs returned to their homes, and the three, i.e. Banyāmīn, Dāwūd and Mūsī, went to the house of Shaykh 'Isī.

Pirālī kept watch in Mawrdin, but was once tempted to take a bath, leaving his son 'Alāla in his place. His son, however, fell asleep, and Pirālī, returning, noticed that the King of the World has passed, in the form of a falcon. Seeing his son asleep, in a fit of anger, he severed his head, and started to follow running the track of that "aroma", without success.

A strange story follows, /59/ the point of which is not obvious: Pirālī reaches a watermill (apparently belonging to himself), and settles down there, working with an assistant during the day and alone at night. Two ētes (devils) try to play a trick on him, he nearly catches them, but they disappear. Then he turns into a quāch-i zard, wild goat, runs towards the hills, where he for seven years in that form keeps watch at Mashākh (?). /58/ "The rest of

the story of Pirālī will be narrated in connection with the coming of the King of religion to the Shāhīna pass (ba-Gardan-pāh-i Shāhīna). The students should note this here, so that (his story) will not remain meaningless."

In conformity with the promise which the King of the World gave to Banyāmīn under the Sāj-i Nār, he comes to the meeting place with Pirālī, and (not seeing him there) passes on to that of Shaykh 'Isī. /60/

Now the narrative goes a little back. First comes a story of two brothers, one rich and wicked, and the other poor but really pious, Shaykh 'Isī. His brother frequently goes on pilgrimages, and acts as the head of the party of ḥajj, and 'Isī implores him to take him. The elder brother agrees, but treacherously abandons him in the desert. Shaykh 'Isī spreads his sajjāda, and becomes busy with his nawaz. Suddenly he sees a stranger sitting on his carpet and recognizes the King of the World who bids him to return home and instruct a certain Ayūt or Aywat, a gardener, to watch for a royal falcon to alight on a dried mulberry tree which will at once become covered with green leaves.

The most interesting points in this story (pp. 60-62, cf. Minī, 45-46, where it is much abbreviated) are the details depicting the purely orthodox milieu, as has been discussed above.

On returning home (p. 62), 'Isī meets the three darwishs, and conveys the message to them. They begin to persuade him to marry the daughter of a certain Hasan Bek is chosen as his bride, and the darwishs come to the latter to arrange the marriage. To get rid of them in a polite way, Hasan Bek asked for immense gifts, and these are miraculously produced. 'Isī marries, and his wife becomes pregnant, thereby giving ample food for gossip to the neighbours. To reduce this, the darwishs settle in a cave opposite to his house.

At last (p. 66) Aywat hears the sound of the falcon's wings, and sees that the dry mulberry tree has become green. He informs the darwishs, and they all rush to the house of 'Isī, where Sultan Shāhāk is then born. It is a pity that the numerous Gurani poems cannot be translated.
Now begins the series of Sultan Saḥāk’s miracles. The first (pp. 69-71. Cf. MinI, 48-50) deals with the dispute over the inheritance left by ‘Iṣ‘a to him and a son by another wife, Qādir-i Nā-pāk. The property consists of a farm and garden. Sultan Saḥāk solds them, and they move after him.

His half-brother seeks help from a certain Chīchāq,44 also styled Nā-pāk, unclean, who brings his tribe, 60,000 strong (pp. 71-73, MinI, 51-52, abbreviated). The King apparently hides in a cave with his associates, and sends Dāwūd to throw a handful of dust upon the enemy, who disperse in confusion. It is here (p. 72) that the magic formula appears for the first time: ba ishrāt-i Shāh, ba shart-i Banyāmīn, etc., i.e. “By the will of the King, by the covenent of Banyāmīn, by the consent of Dāwūd, and the golden pen of Pir-i Miṣr” (sometimes is added: by the pure service of Razbār).

We cannot mistake these fantastic tales for anything but folklore versions of faint remembrances of intense opposition which the new sect met with in the tribal milieu, and the complex process of its struggle for survival.

This apparently brings to an end the portion of the story of Sultan Saḥāk which has a parallel version in Minorsky’s text, in which there are only a few fragments relating to the later events.

(P. 73). After this Sultan Saḥāk turned the sun from its course, and taking up from the Hūrin rock (khār) the charter (qahāla) which Shāh Khūshin threw there without having read it to his followers, he read it to his associates. It was to the effect that the Creator of the World himself, Sultan Ishāq, has become manifested (ba-zahēr rasūl) revealing various miracles, and this is as it should be. They (manifestations) have come, and are coming, until the time when Mahdi Ṣālibu’z-samān manifests himself, and fulfils the wishes of humanity.

He then ascended that rock (ṣang) of Dīzāwār which he had pointed out to Pir-i Ἀļ, and sat on it. By his order a sacrificial animal was produced from the unseen (‘ahān-i hafūm). Pir Banyāmīn rose, took the right foreleg of the animal and put it behind the right ear, saying: Arwaq-i akhir Yār, while the King of the World (also) recited the prayer. After this they took suqūfas from below its throat, cooked it, and distributed it. Saḥāk-ār also offered a prayer. After this they cooked the meat of the sacrificed animal, formed the jam, passed round /74/ ablution water, spread the table-cloth (sufrā), brought the meal and put it before Pir Banyāmīn. Dāwūd was the khdīm. They brought to him bread and vegetable sauce (āsh), placing it in the middle of the assembly, and the food was distributed (i.e. portioned in the form of separate shares, bakhsh, on loaf of bread, to be handed ceremonially to each participant). The khdīm exclaimed: “By the assembly of the King!” (ba jam-i Shāh). The King of the World replied: “Verily, of the King!” (haggān Shāh), such was his prayer. They then handed out the shares (bakhsh, of the ceremonial meal), and the King also offered prayer. (After this was consumed?) they brought (a dish of) girdā-pust (a kind of of pancakes?)45 distributed them, and the King offered prayer. After this they removed the sufrā, while the King again offered prayer, passed round ablution water, also with his prayer. Thereafter Banyāmīn rose to his feet and offered the prayer of the qubd, i.e. the closing of the ceremony.

This is very valuable as a perfectly authentic and detailed account of the jamm ritual. Ordinarily, the place of Banyāmīn is taken by the khalifa although Pir Banyāmīn is invisibly present at every jam, perhaps not so much symbolised as marked by the position of the candle or lamp before which a share (bakhsh) is always laid. The jam is almost always held at night.

“Then (apparently not at the same jam, but on another occasion) he, i.e. the King of the World, stretched out his hand of Divine Might towards the sun, and brought down the charter of the unutterable mystery, which was of the colour of sunlight. It had at the top 1001 seals with the name of the Creator.

44 Villages with the name Chīchāq, Chīchāquī, etc., are found in the vicinity of the Urumiya lake (Fenhang, IV, 197).
He exhibited it to the followers, and they saw their Creator in the form of 1001 persons, each one like the other. Thereafter that charter disappeared, and those persons vanished, and the Sultan of the World was seen sitting alone, with seventy two Pirs ceremonially (dar jam) sitting before him.

The King of the World then said to them: I have revealed to you the principles (qua'ud) and rules (qarar) of haqiqat, and you must accept them. It is decreed (ba-qarar ast) that Banyamin is appointed as Pir-i sharti (i.e. receiving the oath), Daud as rasbar, i.e. instructor, and Pir-i Mūsi as the wazir wa daftar-dār, i.e. administrator and keeper of accounts. /75/ Do not disobey their orders and the rules laid by them (qua'ud wa qarar-i in-hā).” /75/ They also gave names to some persons (ba-mardan ism... nihādan), and the ceremony of the Jawz-i Shāhī (breaking the nut of the King) was also founded at that time.

It is not clear what kind of “names” (appointments?) were given to those persons, and to whom—by the King, or by the jam.48

When the ceremonial part of this meeting was over, an altercation arose in which Piráli (here: Pir ‘Ali) claimed to have been recognized as the wakh-i kār-khāna, i.e. the deputy of the King of the World. He recalled the condition on which he went in search of the King of the World, which was accepted by the community. The exchange of argument in Gurani tristichs was animated, and some people are here named of whom no mention appears elsewhere, as Mir Sayyid, Malik Ţayyar, Hamza Bare-Shāhī.47 It is possible that they were some of the “seventy-two Pirs”, or, perhaps, some of the ghulqe, i.e. persons gifted with the ability of poetical improvisation. The majority was entirely on the side of Banyamin who thus, implicitly, was recognized as the

48 Darwishes, as is known, on their initiation change their ordinary, sharif name to ʿimā hāqiqat, under which they become generally known. But at their being initiated into haqiqat, they receive a new name, which, however, is revealed only to the darwishes of the higher degrees. I could not ascertain whether the AH have such secret haqiqat names.

47 In Minl, 35, Hamza Bare-Shāhī belongs to the bāna of Shāh Khāshān.
This worked well. The King of the World, who miraculously knew of the proceedings, sent word by Dāwūd, and the prisoner (acting boldly) miraculously rode through the crowds, reached his home, and sent his sister to the Pir. (There is no word about the horse).

At this place in our text the narrative is badly curtailed, but can to some extent be reconstructed with the help of Mīnī, 52-53. The bride (p. 78) is for some reason taken to a cave (makhāra), to which the King of the World retires with her, and remains there for seven days. His associates, waiting outside, become restless, and ultimately ask Banyāmīn to bring the bridegroom out. He does so with striking effect: Eight young men, each a perfect copy of the other, emerge out from behind the curtain. In response to the earnest request of his associates the King of the World makes a sign by which he is recognized.

Strangely enough, the author omits to give their names, which according to Mīnī, 52-53, were Mīr Hābīb-Shāh, Sayyid Būl-wafā, Shaykh Shāh-i din, Mīr Mustafā, Sayyid Muhammad Gawre-sawār, Ḥājī Bābā Husayn, and Khāmūsh Pur-chin.

(P. 79). These, as has already been mentioned (cf. p. 5), were the heft tawānā, the progenitors of the different ājdāq. The associates then request the King of the World to tell them, how should they treat the newcomers, and he answers: “If they conform to the shart of Banyāmīn, the meekness (here ridā for rīdā) of Dāwūd, the qalam of Pir-i Mūsī, and the service (khīdat) of Razhār, call them Sayyid and Sayyid-zāda. Otherwise you need neither pay attention to their rank (shahā’īl), nor regard them as the Shaykhs of the Barzanja* (clan)”.

49 Apparent for Shihāb-ad-dīn.
50 This surname does not apparently mean: “riding a wild ass (wār)” but gūr (or gūrī), a light brown, white, or grey (horse), with the e developed to ease pronunciation. This is an exact parallel with such surnames as lāhūd-sādūr, “riding a blue (dark grey) horse”, etc.
51 This myth was obviously created in order to vindicate the dogma of the Incarnation being above procreation, but the author betrays himself sometimes by referring to one of them as “the eldest”.
52 Cf. the same idea in the Panāyāt Jau‘ānmandī, text, p. 49 (or p. 30 of the Translation).
This looks like the foundation (ithbūt) of the practice of confession before the āmū. The scale of offences, however, seems to be rather paradoxical, as may be seen from the several following stories.

(Pp. 81-83). The same man approached the same woman when she was washing clothes in the river, having laid her baby on the bank. He started his indecent demands and threatened to throw the child into the stream; when no amount of reasoning and entreaty availed, the woman flatly refused, and the villain threw the child into the water. The Šāhāb-kār, in his omniscience, knew what was going on, and sent Dāwūd to save the child. The offender again came to the āmū, again confessed, and was again pardoned, with the same formula. Then one of those present, Nārimān by name, drew his knife to stab the rogue who has so scandalised the community. He was, however, restrained by the others, and the Šāhāb-kār said: “By the holy rank (ba-hadd-i pāh) of Banyāmin, and by the holy Kāba, if he had stabbed the man, it would have been a crime of cosmic magnitude. This is because it is the commandment of the Truth that if a man confesses his sin (gināh-i khd-rā ba-garden bī-yūn), we should pardon him: If punishment is demanded here, then from whom will the Lord of humanity demand the fine (ufr) on the Judgment Day?”

(Pp. 83-84). The same rascal son of Pīr-i Mūsī stole some cattle from a tribe, and Šāhāb-kār was accused. He ordered the offender to be brought in order to punish him, but he fled to Darra Shish (7), a village in which there were 40-50 thousand houses (!) of followers of the King of the World, and they refused to hand him over. Šāhāb-kār then commanded Muṣṭafā-y-i Dāwūdān to assume the form of a cat,29 and go to the village at night, and howl from every roof. The worthy, however, had his own house there, which he passed over and came upon the house of an old woman. She, however, had penetrating sight (ratushan chōxhūm). She recognized him, and said: “Hey, man-cat (gurba’i mordān) was it the order of the Truth that thou shouldst pass thine own

29 The idea of a were-cat, with such deadly functions, seems to belong to the Central Asian Turkish folklore.

house, and come over mine?” He returned to his own house, and started to howl,—his family of seven immediately died. In this way he caused the death of everyone.30 /84/

When the people came together again, they complained to Šāhāb-kār, saying that the inhabitants of Darra Shish had not committed any great crime. Being respectable people, they by custom could not surrender the son of Pīr-i Mūsī who sought asylum with them. Šāhāb-kār again gave a priestly answer to the effect that their case would be postponed till the Judgment Day. If the Truth defended them, then they, with their families and servants (kulfut), would go directly to Paradise.

(P. 84). The author now returns to the question of the āmū-i Shāhī, to which he referred (see p. 80 of the Text) in connection with the stones of ujaq. “When he established the āmū-i Shāhī and the institution of Pīr wa dalī, he said that four people could make an agreement amongst themselves (ba ham igaṛi shawand) that on the Day of the Resurrection (Rūs-i ūbih) they would share each other’s sins and virtues, and live in this world in full accord (rida) with each other. (Cf. p. 40).

An extraordinary story follows: (pp. 84-87) which inspires one to question its authenticity, for it exhibits various details which usually belong to fairy tale literature.

Once, while supervising the work of building a house for Šāhāb-kār, in which every one participated, the idea crossed Banyāmin’s mind that he was superior to the others. /85/ When all of them gathered before Šāhāb-kār, he ordered Banyāmin to stand away (yak qodram pas-tar bi-nih), and the latter did not understand the reason for this. After some time the same thing happened again, and thus he was practically expelled. He then asked for permission, which was granted, to go to his igaṛ, i.e. Zar-bānū, the daughter of the King of Bakh (indispensable name in every fairy tale). He walked there, and was reported to Zar-bānū by her maids who saw him near the spring, “with light

30 Cf. Minīl, 219, where a different version of the story is alluded to (Dr. Su’lli3) the inhabitants of Darra’s Shish killed All because they suspected him of adultery with one of their women.
forming a nimbus around his face” (nur az ray-i a tutuq basta).

The lady already knew everything, and wanted to accompany him back to Šahab-kâr. The latter, however, when knowing that they had reached a place not far away, sent his executioner, Mušṭafâ-y-i Dâwûdân, to make Zâhâd die, because (strangely) “if she comes, Šâhib-i amir (Mahdi) will have to manifest himself, and the time for this is still distant”. Banyâmîn, however, was pardoned and permitted to come back. Šahab-kâr’s associates did not understand the reason for this, but he merely said in answer to their inquiries: “friends are numerous; all of them must come and make this world satisfied (in dany-râ ira kunand)”. Mušṭafâ-y-i Dâwûdân was also dismissed. Banyâmîn returned and apparently resumed his former position, without any loss of status.

It is difficult to discover the didactic implications which this story was supposed to convey. It seems therefore probable that it is a reminiscence of a real fact as has been suggested above.

Then follows (pp. 87-92) the lengthy didactic story, referred to above, obviously concocted under the Safawids, about a contact between Sultan Šâhâk and the ancestor of the Safawids, Šâfiyyû’d-din Ardabili (d. 735/1334), a disciple of Zâhid Giliân (d. ca. 700/1301). Shaykh Zâhid sends his disciple, Šâfi, to Sultan Ishâq of Pardîwar, i.e., Sultan Šâhâk, whom he regards as senior to himself, for investiture (kumar bastan), i.e., obviously to receive the rank of an independent murshid. He sends with Šâfi a fried fish in a basket. Šahab-kâr receives this present, orders a ring to be put through the lips of the fish, throws it into his water tank, whereupon it revives, and miraculously re-appears in Gîlân, in the tank of Shaykh Zâhid.

Shaykh Šâfi is admitted to the jam of the AH, at which, as was customary, women are also present. Seeing this, he condemns the practice: Jam-i haqq ast va dam-i haqq ast, but men and women sitting together is indecent (bt-zâhâr). The King of the World

Yasawi, the great Turkish Pir of the end of the XII-th c. A.D., refers to a similar situation. A certain murshid, Bâbâ Machin, also condemns the practice of allowing people of both sexes to participate in ilâk assemblies, held by Yasawî, but he later recognises his superiority and becomes his murid. See A.C. Borovkov, “Studies in the History of the Uzbek Language”, Soviet. Vostokovedenie, V (1948), p. 232 (in Russian).

This is yet another borrowing from Turkish darwish lore. A similar miracle is ascribed to a saint, Abdûl Mûsâ, who sends a similar present to Ghenghî (or Gheykî) Bâbâ, see F.W. Halsuck, “Christianity and Islam under the Sultans”, vol. i, p. 290.

I could not ascertain the meaning of mirahat qâdiyân (met with several times in the text). Perhaps it refers to the form of the moustache.
Then the apopthesis is staged, with all the usual details, including the charter of the unutterable mystery. It repeats almost literally the wording used in previous accounts. Sultan Shakh then tells the "four bodies" (chahar jasad): "Go to the house of Qanbar Shahu who has no children. You will see him there." He added a few more words to them concerning the arrangement. After this he appeared to die (parda kashid).

What follows really belongs to the story of the next Incarnation. It is noteworthy that the "four bodies" change their "dress" (har yakt be dun-i digar ustada asd, and further ba dun-i qalandar gardedand, when coming back). But further on it appears that it was not the question of disguise because their "substances" re-appear under different names, apparently as quite different persons. Why did they disperse from Shahu and travel to places hundreds of miles away? The A.H tradition apparently is not interested in such matters.

(Manifeshation V).

QIRMIZI

"The coming of the King of the World in the person (jam) of Qirmizi who is the fifth jam." As has been said before, the story of Qirmizi begins on p. 94. (Cf. Minl, 5-8). The four associates change their dress and disperse: Banyamin went to Ardabil, Dawud to the country of the Cherkesses, Pir-i Mushi to Damascus, and Mustafay-yi Dawudan to Dawudan. Seven years later, dressed as qalandars, they began to move towards Chashma Sultan, the appointed meeting place. On their way they all passed by a poor woman who had only one loaf of bread for the whole family. She piously gave a piece to each of them as alms. As can be seen further on, this was in fact the whole loaf. There is no clue as to whether this woman was a re-incarnation of somebody.

The darwishes met at the Chashma Sultan, each recited a kalum, i.e. a tristich in Gurani, and was recognized. Banyamin was then known by the name Kaka Pir, Dawud-Kaka Tah, Mushi - Kaka Rahim, and Mustafay-yi Dawudan - Khatin Razhr or Razhami.

(P. 97, cf. Minl, 7-8). The four angels, in the guise of qalandars came to Qanbar Shahu, who was a very pious person (jahib kardar), as was his wife also. During conversation they inquired whether he had any children, and in reply to his negative answer, Banyamin produced an apple from his pocket (as any darwish would probably do under similar circumstances. The apple, the fruit of Venus, plays a big part in superstition connected with love in Persia), and gave it to them, saying: "The King of the World gives you a son. Do not name him, however, until I come, and personally give him a name." A year later they all came again, but Qanbar's wife was not even pregnant. In order not to disappoint them, she took a piece of mutton, wrapped it in cloth, and laid it into the cradle. Banyamin insisted on seeing the child who, she said, had been born, and went personally and took out a
baby boy, noticing that he had a good colour of face, — qirmizi means red. He named the child Shâh Wâyâ-Quîli.

(P. 99, cf. Minl, 9). Once forty mounted raiders drove away a herd of cattle belonging to the Shâhû'i nomads (îdât), and Shâh Wâyâ-Quîli began to demand an attack upon them to regain the property. As he was in appearance but the son of a poor peasant, the people began to laugh, advising him to go alone, on foot. He went, intending to reveal himself to the people, /100/ he uttered a darwish cry (nârâ'i Haydari) when he saw the robbers, and they tied each other up. He then cut off their ears and nostrils, tied these in a handkerchief, and went home. His friends were astonished, and those who had "spiritual sight" began to worship him.

Another miracle in a similar rural setting (pp. 100-101, cf. Minl, 9-10, which differs considerably) refers to a cattle raiding adventure, in which Qirmizi himself was the stealer. There was a great famine in their locality, and one night when Shâh Wâyâ-Quîli went out, he saw a woman with starving children boiling a stone in a kettle in order to deceive them and thus allay their pangs of hunger. He went back and, saw a friend, Yâr-Quîli. He suggested a raid on the nomads' flocks on the other side of the Sirvân river, they crossed the bridge and he seized two sheep, one under each arm. But an alarm was raised and their retreat to the bridge was cut off. He then made Yâr-Quîli sit on his shoulders, and, with the two sheep in addition, jumped over the river, "a mile wide". They gave one sheep to the poor woman.

The next story (pp. 102-103, much dif. from Minl, 10-11) deals with a miracle which very often appears in Persian fairy tales: For some reason which is not clear, Qirmizi cuts a man into two halves. The man has been bitten by a rabid dog. He takes the body to Shâhû, where he is going. On arriving there, he utters a command in the 'Aмирân language, and the sun descends.

In some darwish ri'asâs a similar story is narrated about Bektaşi, obviously based on popular etymology of the name, Bek — prince and Shâhû — stone. In similar circumstances his mother wraps up a stone and brings out to the darwishes who miraculously turn it into a child.

he puts both, the sun and the moon, under his knees, and for seven days there is darkness, until he dismisses them. He then orders Kâ'Arab to bring the halves of the corpse, and brings back the man to life. By his orders a mountain bull and a wild goat (gûr-i kâhi dâ qâch) come out, and lift their forelegs to touch their ears. They are sacrificed and eaten. He then orders the Sirvân to flow upstream, and later turns it again. He orders some of his followers to go to the hills and collect kinât grass for his horse, promising to send them seven mountain bulls as game to feed on.

After this follows a story (pp. 103-105, cf. Minl, 14-15, some few lines, which do not make sense) of the pious Shâhû'ís and the silly Kûpâ-sâ'ís, who were sent to collect hay, as mentioned above. They went just before the miracle of sitting on the sun, and as a single day became as long as seven days, they were terribly hungry. They saw seven boars, but did not kill them, lying flat till they had passed. But the Kûpâ-sâ'ís thought that these were the promised mountain bulls, so they killed them and ate their flesh. The King of the World knew this and exposed them. 

"After this Şâhâb-karam worked many miracles. It would take much space to describe them all."

(P. 105, cf. Minl, 13-14). We come to one of the most enigmatic ideas in AH tradition, the myth about the origin of the AH festival, 'Id-i Şâhû. It is connected with yârân-i Qabal-tâs, or Quwâr-Tâs, Qurâ'ân (p. 106), or Qawaratâs, etc. The story runs: 'Seven men of Quwâr-Tâs (perhaps the name of a tribe or a village) went to the King of the World for the purpose of testing his genuineness. Within half a farasakh (just under two miles) there was a cave (maghârâ), in which they put up, saying:"

---

60 The purpose of these stories is not obvious. Most probably they are reminiscences of some petty local rivalries. As will be seen, the rivalry between the Shâhû'ís and Kûpâ-sâ'ís persists throughout the tradition connected with the later incarnations.

61 This form seems to be preferable as that which appears most frequently, and is also used in poems.

62 Cf. Minl, 218, who mentions that the Sayyid of Kabârûtân pronounced the name Qabarât, explaining that it was derived from the name of a village "near Karînd". The Fûrûg contains no mention of such a village.
"We have come such a long distance. He should meet us here, so that we may talk to him". /106/ The King of the World (in his omniscience) knew this, he called the "catcher" (of souls, qābīd, i.e. Muṣṭāfā-yi Dāwūdān) and said: "The Qawar-tās people want a ceremonial reception (īṣīqābī). Go, and find a certain cloud over the chain of the Qāf mountains which has given no rain for exactly seven years to-day. Take this and bring it as a reception party." The Qābīd, who was a dān, re-incarnation of Muṣṭāfā (y-i Dāwūdān), went and took that cloud and came to the place where those men were, and for three days and nights he made it rain (and snow) violently. They all died there from hunger and cold. (There are several Gurani tristichs, containing nothing important.) /107/ "Kā Pira, who was a dān of Banyāmīn-i Shāft, approached the King of the World, saying: "This is unlike the King's generosity. Any one whose name is yār (friend, i.e. a member of the AH community), and who comes to this palace for religious considerations (rāy-i niyāz), should not be turned away disappointed (wa mahāram). We therefore hope that the Pure Substance will look (mercifully) upon these adepts (in fā'īfa), and resuscitate them, in order that people will not say that the pilgrims who went to Qirmizi were buried under the snow. This would be a source of condemnation of this ḳhāndān. May the Merciful show his generosity." 64

When Pir-i Shāft said this, the King of the World felt more generous and said: "O, Pir-i Shāft, I swear by the Substance of the First and the Last, that if it had not been for your intercession, the punishment of these people would have continued until the advent of the Resurrection. As we have sworn in the world of atoms ('alān-i dhārr) that you shall be a pir and that I will do everything which you wish, (I shall do this). According to this, Kākā 'Arab may go and bring them into my presence.

Kā Pira remonstrated: "May I be sacrificed for thy sake! There are only corpses, how can be bring them?"

64 In Minorsky's ms. the story is narrated with different details, and the adventures of the Qabaltās pilgrims are mixed up with the story of Ḥafṣ tawīlāt.
Whoever regards himself as belonging to the jam of the AH, will be excommunicated if he fasts. He becomes /110/ a member of any other community: he will never join the rows (qafar) of Banyāmin. And then, O Pir-i Shart, every member of the AH community must observe "Jashn-i Shahī", the King's Festival."

Kā Pirā then asked a question which may appear strange to us: "Should this festival be celebrated by the Delfs (Delfān), or by the Kūpāsās?" As we have seen above, the Kūpāsās were accused of eating the flesh of wild pig. The answer is no more sensible: The Delfs should celebrate it, and the Kūpāsās should fast three days". Does it mean that the Qubāl-Tās men were also Kūpāsās? In any case it is clear that the three day fast was intended as an expiatory act: the offenders having violated their oath (az igrār-i khād bāz gashī nāmādand) and (basic) laws (khilāf-i arkān), thus brought themselves into a condition of unlawfulness (dakhil-i harām shudand). "In any case I know that they will neither honour myself, nor remain faithful to the Shart-i Banyāmin". /111/

In view of the protests of the Pir, fasting is declared to be unlawful (harām) for any member of the AH community, and this is expressed in a tristich:

_Shāh karam kerdān rūza bātāl-e-n._
_Hor kāz rā'as'š kart zahr-i gātil-e-n._
_Ze Shart Banyāmin hāmā rā 'āthil-e-n._

i.e. "The King is pleased to make fasting void. Every one who has fasted (as if he has eaten) deadly poison, and is suspended from the Shart of Banyāmin". (More poetry is added). /112/

Banyāmin (ṣīrī) asks: in whose honour (dar ī'ahān-i kī) the festival should be? The answer: in honour of the Sultan of the World. This is because the four angels (chahār jasād) under Sultan Shāhk implored him to establish a festival (qarār-i 'Id anqarrār famā'īd), and he promised to do this during the time of the jāmā of Qirmizi. And the latter ordered the people of Shāhu to have three days of khidmat (we have explained this term above, see the section on sacrifice).

Some Shāhu's asked Qirmizi about the reasons (sa'ābah) for this institution, and also about the procedure (āšāb) to be adopted at such celebrations. /113/ He said that the community should offer khagr-i khidmat (at any time of) every year, but in any case this should be done during the month of the 'Id, Festival (māh-i 'Id bāyād muhā bāshad). In the Gerani tristichs which Qirmizi recites further on it is stated that the Festival should take place on the 13-th of the month of Isfand, or māh-i chilla, according to the popular calendar. Those who did not observe this Festival (everywhere it is written jashī for jashn), were to be expelled from the jam. /114/.

Then, apparently to show in practice how the Festival should be celebrated, Qirmizi staged his farewell apotheosis which deserves to be translated in almost its entirety.

He ordered everyone to bathe their bodies and don clean dress, arriving on the night of the seventeenth of the Chilla month (i.e. the evening of the sixteenth). The entertainment (khidmat) was arranged in the house of Qirmizi himself. He himself was to sit in one of his rooms alone, with 72 Shāhu's in attendance.

It was evening (twag-i Dāwād), Qirmizi entered the room and invited others to enter. "They entered, and saw that it was a garden, in the middle of which there was a building, and that a throne was set up there by the Divine might, on which Qirmizi was sitting, and that Qirmizi was at the same time amongst them. They turned to him, asking who it was sitting on the throne? Qirmizi replied with a quatrain (cf. also Text, p. 44):

_Mā'im, mā'im mi-namā'im (ki mā'im)._
_Qadd basta miyān tuhi chu nāy-im._
_Amadim khūd-rā ba-khalq bi-namā'im._
_Khalqān kār axt, mā chu ʿāthāb paydā-im._

(i.e.) "This is we, this is we, we are showing (that it is we), girdled, but empty inside, as a reed. We came to manifest our-

55. The month of Isfand, the last in the year, ends on the 20th of March. The Chilla's biurgh of the popular calendar is a rather indefinite period, beginning about the end of January, and lasting about seven weeks. Minill, 221-222, tries to ascertain the date, quoting various travellers, but the only correct statement seems to be that of Col. El. Chirkov, 282, "13 days before Nawrūz"."
selves to the people. The people are blind, but we are as apparent as the sun”.

Thereafter they looked and saw that 1,000 persons (ṣiṭāt) sat on the throne, and Qirmizi had also joined them, and that they were alike, while 124,000 prophets were standing before him.

Kāka Pira and Khatūn Zarbānu (or Razbānu) brought entertainment (khādmat) to the jam /115/ and Kāka ‘Arab began to act as a khādīm while Kāka Raḥmān acted as the recorder of confidential matters (daftar-dhīr-i bāṭīn). By the order of Qirmizi the four angels (yārān-i chahār jāsād) sat in the jam, and Kāka Pira distributed the offerings (khādmat). Thereafter the jam was concluded, Qirmizi offered a prayer (of conclusion), and the others exclaimed “Hā”.

After this they distributed shares to the absent members (ba ḫāna-b-i jam bakhš dādand), offering the prayer of gratitude. They saw that Qirmizi was sitting alone when (suddenly) the Maqām of Shāh Khūshūn appeared, and Qirmizi said: “This is the Festival of Truth” (jashn-i haqqī). Then 900 and (by?) 900 took the maqām of participation (yārī), and they were busy till morning with the recitation of the dhikr of haqqī (dhikr-i yārī).

The King then was pleased to get up, he descended from the throne, walked to the garden which had a door, entered it, and the 72 walked after him. This was another garden, with a throne set in it by the Divine might. On the throne Qirmizi was sitting, and houries and ghilmān were standing before him, and 124,000 prophets formed 1001 jams, while at every jam, in the place of honour there sat Qirmizi himself. At every jam, instead of a candle, the sun was placed. This jam was held on the night of the 18-th (i.e. from the 17-th to the 18-th). They had finished with offerings (khādmat saba shud), and Qirmizi ordered the Nuhşad-nuḥşada to come in. By his order they formed the assembly of the faithful (maqām-i yārī), and till morning occupied themselves with dhikr, distributing sweets (shakarāna). /116/ Shāh Qirmizi offered prayers on the termination of the jam, and everyone exclaimed “Hā”. Then they saw Qirmizi sitting alone on the platform, when all the rest had vanished.

On the night of the 19-th, the third night, again in the same sequence, the ceremony took place, as described above. Then Qirmizi got up and walked out of the building, followed by the seventy two, and they saw that it was the door of the same room, it was morning, the sun having just risen.

(Other) inhabitants of Shāhū also came to pay their respects to Qirmizi. Kāka Pira offered to Qirmizi presents for the festival. He also instructed the people, and they also brought with them presents, which were accepted with a prayer by him. He addressed the four angels and others saying that it was the festival of Truth (Jā-i haqqī), and that it should be blessed for them. All of them prostrated themselves and thanked him.

Such visionary and fantastic celebrations, however, had a bitter sequence. When the participants, the 72 Shāhū, dispersed and went to their homes, they told others about their experiences, and were met with utter incredulity. /117/ The seventy two then suggested that they should refer to the four angels, and the latter advised them to refer to Qirmizi himself.

Qirmizi said: “It is the Festival to-day, and what they have seen will also be seen by you. Go, mount your horses, and come back”. So they did, and Qirmizi rode out with them. Then they saw that his horse rose over the earth, and that he was turning it in the air, until he became invisible. After this he re-appeared in the skies followed by the 900 by 900, who formed an assembly (maqām-i yārī), riding in circles. Then a great multitude of horsemen appeared, and the seventy two recognized in them /118/ those whom they had seen the night before at the jam-i bāṭīn. Then all these vanished and Qirmizi descended. It was explained to them that the multitude had consisted of 124,000 prophets.

While the Shāhū felt satisfied about the reality of this performance, several Kūpūā’s, who were present, denied it, saying that Qirmizi had been galloping with them on the earth, not in the air. It was reported to him, and he said that these people were Sunnis, not the AH, that before coming there they had held a fast, which was unlawful, and that the Shāhū’s should not mix with them.
Then comes the real ceremonial apotheosis: the King of the World sat on the rock (Sang) of Dizawar, repeating /119/ the prophecy of the coming of the "one with narcissus-like eyes and a beard divided into two parts, who will sit (here) with four people, one being left standing." Then, by his order, a sacrificial sheep appeared from nowhere, and was innumulated, etc., this was accompanied by visions, the charter (of 18,000 words), almost exactly word for word, as in the previous accounts.

The deputy governor (hākim) of the district, Khān Ahmad Khān, /120/ having heard much about Qirmizi's miracles, became his murid, but the spiritually blind ones were in doubt, saying: "The substance (dhāt) is Divine, but the aerial horsemen were not genuine".

An anecdote is inserted here: 'Īsā, a servant, approached Qirmizi, asking him to give him sustenance ("bread", ḍān), i.e., a pension, until the coming of the Mahdi (Ṣāhilibuz-zainū). Qirmizi gives his seal to 'Īsā's wife, predicting that a son will be born to her, to whose arm this seal should be bound. This will make them safe for seven generations.

This was probably a part of Qirmizi's will. Another of his acts was to address his followers. /121/ to whom he said: Dhu[l (or Zulul), his wife, was pregnant, while he wanted "to fly" (mi-khurshām ki ṣawāf kunām, an expression from the darwish jargon). "After me a son will be born to whom the name Muhammad must be given, because he will be the Mahdi. He will come secretly (makhfī), and will go secretly until the time comes for his manifestation (ṣuhār). Ask him for whatever you wish".

Next morning he rode away with his associates, and on his road he met a local chief, Ḥūlū Khān, the enemy of his religion. They met on the bridge over the Sirwan river. Ḥūlū Khān challenged Qirmizi to show him a miracle. A line of cranes was flying high. Qirmizi pointed to them with his finger, and they fell on the bridge. His adversary called this the feat of a magician. Qirmizi then pointed to him with his finger, and he became split into two parts. /122/

The Nānakalis (a Kurdish Sunnite tribe) decided to kill Qirmizi. The King of the World, knowing of this, said to his faithful followers: "To-morrow, or perhaps the day after, the Nānakalis will attack me to kill me. If I don a white coat (qubā), call me 'Ali Qalandar"./68

The next morning, when he appeared as 'Ali Qalandar, (the Nānakalis) attacked and shot him, and dismembered his body. He had a ring on his finger, and falling to get this off, they put his hand upon a piece of wood, and hit the finger with swords and axes, without success. Thereafter they buried a portion of his body, throwing the rest into the waters of the Sirwan river.

A girl, belonging to the Jaf tribe, happened to be near the river filling her vessels with water. She saw some one swimming towards her, Approaching her, he said: "Do not be afraid. Take this ring: for good luck, I make a present of it to thee". And she saw /123/ and recognised 'Ali Murtadah himself, and also realised her own previous incarnations. That girl was a re-incarnation, ḍān, of the old woman who at the time of Murtadah 'Ali used to bring him for a bowl of curd (masar). And he said her: "Go to the Delf tribe, and say that the Nānakalis have killed 'Ali Qalandar. But that if they try to avenge my blood, I shall not accept it because I myself willed this, being Living, Eternal".

(But before his death) the Shāhu's (once) asked him what they should do after his disappearance. He gave them a knife and a whet-stone (bard) which a certain Shahr-amir was to keep in his house. "If one should come in the dress of a young darwish (cabdat), and the knife and whet-stone come out of the saddlebag by themselves, and lie on his knees, and if a two year old goat should come from its herd, and stop opposite the darwish—then know that that darwish is myself, and I am he. Obey (his orders)"). /124/

/68 Apparently something has been omitted here in the story, because it is not clear why such instructions "to call" him are given here.
MUHAMMAD BEK

"The Friend is the First and the Last! The Manifestation of Muhammad Bek".

The four angels were waiting, and at last Khātun Dhdulā came out from her house, bringing a son, before whom they prostrated themselves. He was named Muhammad Bek, in order not to "lift the screen" (parda) from him. Apparently many years later this Muhammad Bek, of whose childhood no miracles are reported, bids his community to remain faithful, and goes to Rūm, i.e. Turkey, "Ala Qāṣī", the "High Porte", a name hardly known in Persia then, and probably introduced by the compiler. This journey was undertaken because Qirmīzī, in his dīn, promised to go there. While in Turkey, Shahb-kār assumes the name of Hāji Bekkash (1). He remains there for seven years. /125/

Then, in the guise of a darwish, he goes to Luristan, to the house of Shahr-āmir, a village bailiff. He works a miracle by curing a paralytic boy. /126/ He then makes a sign, and the knife and whet-stone come out, he is recognized, and worshipped.

Muhammad Bek then rides an untamed horse on his way to the Delf tribe, from Sīkawand to the Buzgīr hills. /127/ where he plants his walking-stick, and it at once becomes full-grown plane tree. Then, instead of a horse, he rides a robust man. Thence he goes to Bālūrān. /128/ The people begin to ask him to come into the open and relieve the people from the condemnation of their religion (i.e. from persecution).

(1 P. 128. Cf. Minīl, 58, which gives a different version.) When his followers insist on coming into the open (parda az rāy-i kār bar-dāhsīn) he advises them not to make haste, and then asks them to sacrifice to Māwā seven men, after which he will fulfill their wish. They promise to do this. His qalandar's tent is pitched, and he invites the volunteers to enter one by one, to be immolated. Three men, Jashni, Ṣahl-Quli and Salmān, enter, one by one, prepared to be sacrificed. In the tent they see wild goats which appeared from nowhere to be sacrificed instead of them. Each sacrifices one animal. These people are those whose substance has been purd from pre-eternity, and who have firm faith.

The spectators outside the tent begin to murmur. /129/ asking, "Why has he killed these men?" The King of the World knows this, and addresses them: "O, you, impatient, blind ones, come and see!"

The animals are served and distributed, the people partake of the meat, and take away shares with them for their families. And the King of the World appoints there seven Khalīfās (deputies).

Here begins his apotheosis, using exactly the same expressions as in the similar accounts concerning his predecessors.

/130/ He prophecies that a fire (or a fiery one), Ātīshī, will come into the world. He will settle in the village of Qāsim-Quli, and will become the fire of the world.

He settles in Ājurū, and begins to preach (?) there,—nāṣīq zhind.

Once four Khalīfās come from Luristan to see Muhammad Bek. On reaching the banks of the stream of Ājurū, they see a strange bird which fell near the water, and is such as no one has ever seen the like of it before: it has feathers of a thousand colours, and its eyes are like those of a human being. They come nearer, and see that it does not fly away. They catch it and bring it to Muhammad Bek, laying it before him. He takes it, and places it under his cloak. They distribute sweets and suddenly see an eight-year old girl coming out from beneath his cloak. Muhammad Bek says kindly three times: "my Sūna, very welcome!" (Later on)

57 In the Farhang this is called Ājurū, while Minorsky writes Ājirī. It is a small village now, in the Marāgha district, with only 65 Sunni and Kurd as population. The Atish Bek district, dīh, an ancient term, lies near Tabriz itself, and consists of 176 hamlets, with a total population of about 15,000, mostly Shi’ites. See Farhang, IV, 4-5.
he, in appearance, married her, /131/ and Khān Ātish was born by her.

His brothers implore Muḥammad Bek to tell them which of them will be “dān-i xwār”, i.e. the Incarnation, and he says: “after myself fire (ātish) is coming. After him Imām-Quli, then Sarḵūš, then Sultān Maḥmūd, then Mīrzā Ābās Bek, then Mīrzā Nīṣām, and Aqā Mīrzā. We are they, and they are we” (cf. above, the section on history).

He puts down the thanks-offering nut (javāz šukrāna), and said over it: “It is promised (covenant) that at that-time (Resurrection?) you will know the manifestation of the Șāḥab-kār before the followers of all other religions. He who has no faith in this word of unutterable mystery, is alien to the šarṭ of Banyāmīn (i.e. the AH community)”.

The four jasaq are satisfied and happy, and after this the King of the World disappears from their vision.

MiNi, 59, mentions a “miracle” which is often remembered by the AH: Muḥammad Bek once took a stick and began to strike off the tops of those flowers (in the garden) which were rising taller than the others. This is the familiar motive of the sinfulness of self-assertion and attaching to one self too much importance (for which even Banyāmīn had suffered, as has already been narrated). Its appearance here is obviously an introduction to the further stories of the rivalry which arose amongst the brothers.

(Manifestation VII).

KHĀN ĀTISH.

“The Seventh Jāma. The Advent of the King of the World in the Dān of Ātishī”.

“Some time had passed since a promise (na’da) had been given to the people of Rūm (Turkey)”. Some people, obviously Turks, were searching for the King of the World, and ultimately found him in Ājurī, prostrated themselves before him, and returned home, carrying the glad tidings. A certain man, whose only son had died, exhumed the corpse, and brought it to Ājurī, to ask the King of the World to revive the boy. They found him sitting on a rock (balā-yi suqī). He said that they should slaughter the sheep which they had brought for sacrifice, and that if water came from nowhere and washed off the blood, the boy would revive. /133/ The animals were sacrificed, cooked, and heavy rūm fell, washing off all traces of blood, and the boy came to life. Several unbelievers (ahl-i kūfār) who were present became Muslims, and confirmed adepts (fālib) of ḥagqāt.

The four jasaq, who were the brothers of Ātish Bek, mulḥāq na-shuṭand, i.e. failed to reconcile at once themselves with the situation, each claiming the headship for himself.

One day (cf. MiNi, 59) the Billbāsīs drove away the brothers’ drove of horses, and the latter rode out to recapture it. Khān Ātish mounted a two year old colt. His brothers ridiculed him, but /134/ he made a sign with his hand and the drive returned to him while the Billbāsīs started to fight amongst themselves.

This miracle, however, did not settle the dispute. Then Khān Ātish performed another miracle: at his sign a title deed of the possession of Ādharbāyjān (cf. MiNi, 60) was produced from a rock (gābāla mulkiyat-i Ādharbāyjān), and yet the attitude of his brothers remained hostile.

Then they came to Sūna khānum, the mother of Ātish Bek, and asked her who should be the successor of their father (dar sar-i mārma). Sūna khānum asked for time in which to consult Muhammad Bek in a dream, and then made a peculiar arrangement. A room was emptied and its door locked. In the evening (waqūt-i Dāvūd) each brother in turn had to come to the door, but each found it locked until Ātish came /135/ and found that the door was open, carpets had been brought from nowhere and spread, and the stove (bukhārt, a modern expression) was full of burning fuel. They all sat near it, with their clever mother, Sūna khānum, and sister, Khātān Pari-Khānī. They looked, and lo! a man in red dress (shakhṣīt qirimīz-fūsh) appeared from the midst of the fire, attired in red fire, with a darwish axe (tābāzīn) with
a jewelled handle on his shoulder. With this he touched the shoulder of Khán Jamshíd, appointing him as Banyámín, then he touched Khán Almás, making him Pir-i Múšfí vazír, then placing it on the shoulder of Khátún Paríkhán, he said: "Thou art Razhár-i sháry". Then he placed the tabázstún upon the shoulder of Khán Átish, and said: "The Giver of whatsoever you ask (murád-díhanda har chi bi-khwiálí)". The fiery man disappeared, and when the brothers looked, they saw that Muhammad Bek was sitting /136/ amongst them. They rose in respect, looked again, and saw that it was Khán Átish, so they sat down, and the same thing happened again. They therefore announced Khán Átish as the pure Substance of Muhammad Bek to the Delf tribe, and these came to pay their respects to him.

Then comes the apotheosis of Átish Khán, along the traditional lines, described in the usual expressions. /137/

Once Khán Átish went game shooting, accompanied by his angel-brothers. Suddenly they saw that he had assumed the form of a falcon and risen skywards. Then taking the direction to the šahand mountain, he disappeared into the cloud which was hanging there. So, mysteriously, ended his career.

He had two sons, the elder being Pármúrz Khán, and, the younger, Imám-Qulí, who began to quarrel over the headship. With the four jásád, i.e. their uncles, they went on one occasion to the top of the šahand mountains, and saw some cranes flying. They wanted to shoot them, but Imán-Qulí intending to demonstrate his Divine Substance, sat on a stone, and turned it into a horse, then went up, and killed some cranes with his sword. Thus they saw that the prophecy of Muhyámmed Bek had come true. /138/

Thus ended the seventh manifestation (dún), the matter being completed until the time of the manifestation of Šáhíb'd-zamán (Mahdí).

The end (of the copying) of the book. Thursday, the 12th of the month of Shá'bání, 1291 (i.e. Sept. 24, 1874).

2. Additional Chapters to the Tadhkírath-Álā.

Báb. Once, during the period of Khán Átish, there was a communal meal (rúz-i khidmat). They brought cooked food (khidmat), and poured it into a basin from the cauldron (qálqún), but Khán Átish rejected it, explaining that there was a sin in connecting with it, and that therefore he could not pronounce over it the prayer belonging to the Sharí'i Banyámín. /140/ They ultimately found that the cauldron had originally been stolen. The man who had sold it was so impressed by this that he and his family (qábíla) were converted. /141/

Báb. Two friends, both AH, picked a quarrel over a trivial matter, in which one of them was killed, and the offender threw his body under a rock. /142/ At night he went to the jam, but Khán Átish, who knew everything, ordered them to prevent his coming, thus excommunicating him. /143/

Báb. A member of the AH community who had no fear of God in his heart, once visited a kháríjí (i.e. not a member of the AH) who was smoking a qályan, water-type. The member also smoked it, and in the process (unwittingly) bit off a hair from his moustache. At night he intended to go to the jam, but Khán Átish, from whom nothing was hidden, excommunicated him and ordered that he should not be allowed in. He explained that a hair from one's moustache is as sacred as the Coran, and that to drop it is the same as to tread upon the holy book. There are one and a half pages of Turkish verse (144-145).

Báb. A case from the time of Súltán-i-Álam, i.e. obviously Súltán Şáhák. Two AH men went to collect firewood, quarrelled, and one hit the other on the head, causing a wound. Then, realising his crime, he bandaged the other's wound, brought him to his senses, and apologised, they made peace, kissed each other's hands, and went home. /146/ The offender wanted to come to the jam, but Súltán Şáhák ordered Dáwúd not to let him in. In reply to Banyámín's pleading he explains that the offender must confess his error publicly, whereupon he may be forgiven, even in the case of a great crime,—jm-i haqqaft Ka'ba'i bá'ín ast. /147/
Bâb. Two AH men asked Sultan Şahâk to forgive them a sin of which they were too ashamed to confess. Three more came in the same way. They were all charged with eating ḥarâm, i.e. appropriating what was unlawful to them, and had in fact stolen from the sacrificial meals at the jam. One of them was also guilty of accepting a piece of bread from a stranger who was in fact a thief.

Bâb. A certain man suffered from a curious but unpleasant sensation: whenever he sat in the jam, he felt as if he had turned his back on the assembly, so that his face was looking outwards. He never told anyone about this, but came to Sultan Şahâk. The latter explained that this was the punishment for his behaviour when he had abetted a thief. He repented and all was well.

Bâb. At the time of Sultan Şahâk once a year at a jam held in his presence, Pir-i Müsî would read out the records of good and bad actions of every member. There was at that time a place called Hawramân which had a population of twelve thousand families, all of whom were followers of the Sultan of the World. He strictly prohibited them from stealing. On one occasion several of these men attended the jam at which the daftar-i bâtin, the confidential book, was read, in the presence of Şahâb-kâr. The Hawramânîs were surprised to find that not a single good action had been credited to them, anyone among a population of 12,000 families. Sultan Şahâk explained that one of them had picked up a piece of wood which belonged to a non-sectarian, and had used it for the yoke of his oxen. The unlawful (ḥarâm) possession of that wood had made the bread from the wheat raised with the help of that plough ḥarâm, and thus they “had eaten ḥarâm.”

No wonder that such fastidious precision in the assessment of good actions made the unsophisticated Hawramânîs indignant, and they decided to leave the religion en masse. Sultan Şahâk then ordered Dawûd to take a few pebbles from the room used for the jam, and to throw them into Hawramân so as to wipe it out completely. He did this, destroying all their houses.

68 Usually written without the initial H. Here it must be either Hawramân-i Lahûn or A. d. Takht.

However, knowing the rules of the shahr-i Bâyâmânî, they collected a hundred dinârs from each person, and offered it to Dawûd for intercession with the Sultan of the World. Then the latter sent Dawûd back, and in a minute he restored all the ruins to their former state, so that nothing whatever was destroyed or missing. The people, finding themselves safe, wondered at the purpose of this senseless fury. They discarded the crops of that year, and repented to the Sultan of the World, who explained that ḥaqqâl was as narrow a path as a hair. They then asked: “What is the real substance of Dawûd?” He explained that in pre-eternity Dawûd was appointed to intercede, to help people in distress. When at the manifestation of the Mahdi (Ṣâhib’s-ṣamân) the world is ruined from East to West, every one will be (by that time) ahl-i Ḥaqq, and all should appeal to Dawûd.

This is the aetiological myth explaining the reasons and circumstances of the introduction of the impost of māh-i Dawûd, discussed in the section of “Religious Assembly”. As has been mentioned there, Minî, I-3 gives a different story in which Dawûd saves the passengers of a ship in answer to the prayer of a certain poor man, called Gaîîn-kul (i.e. “One with a piece of rough hand-woven rag on his shoulders”) whom the passengers intended to throw overboard as a sacrifice to appease the angry sea. When relieved from danger, they showered moneys on the poor man, and although he refused to accept them, a piece of 100 dinârs (yak saûnâr, colloquially) remained unnoticed in the folds of his turban.

(The next bâb, T 152-154, is dealt with separately below).

Bâb (p. 154). At the time of Sultan Şahâk there was in Hawramân a certain pious man, Ahmad, who gave seven hundred tunams to the King of the World as an offering (nadîr). Once it so happened that having washed his beard, he incidentally bit off a hair from his moustache. As he was coming to the jam at which the daftar-i bâtin (mentioned just above) was to be read, he hurt his foot, and reached Pardîwar in an almost dying condition. The Sultan of the World told Dawûd that Ahmad had been excommunicated. The four angels became alarmed, and Sultan Şahâk explained that he had bitten off a hair from his moustache,
and that that was an unforgivable offence, because according to the covenant and condition (sharāf naqārār) entered upon in the Sāj-i Nār with Banyāmīn, whoever destroys (qad kund) so much as a hair from this moustache, becomes automatically excommunicated.

The angels implored him to settle this offence now, instead of postponing it to the Judgment Day. At this moment Shaykh Ahmad arrived. A spark of fire came out of Sultan Šahāk's foot, fell upon Ahmad's head, and he was at once burnt up completely.

Bāb. At the same period there was an AH man, Rahanān. Once it so happened that as he was going hunting, he met a certain woman who was carrying a bowl of curd (kāz'ī āmst) to the Sultan of the World. /156/ By force, despite her resistance, he kissed her. When she came into the presence of Sultan Šahāk, the latter, knowing what had passed, promised to punish the culprit. He added an important statement: "In the sharī'ī Banyāmīn such things are allowed only after the distribution of the jamūz-i yāri in a wedding ceremony. To cast covetous eyes on anyone is a sin, but to commit an act of treachery in respect of a co-religionist, is especially so, and is punishable by excommunication. If one takes unlawfully, without permission, from some one else's property even as little as a grain of millet, his sin is equal to that of eating the meat of a sacrificed animal without a prayer. The property of an AH co-religionist is as sacred as a religious offering (nadhr-i miyādū)." /157/

Just as in the previous story (about the son of Pir-i Mūsā, cf. T 80-84) the offender took asylum with a tribe, this time in a certain village called Dūsha,70 which had seven thousand families, and occupied a territory of seven farsaks (ab. 28 miles) in width and length. His surrender was demanded, but the people refused. Then Dīvīd was instructed to throw a stone from the "middle of jam", which he did, destroying everything and everyone. In the place where the offender had stood a pit was formed, and the whole yāristān territory was burnt.

70 Apparently the same as Dūsha, sub-distr. Āwāmānd-i Lahūn, distr. Pıvā, a village of 575 Sunni Kurds. See Fanāhān, V, 183.

Bāb. At the same period there was an AH man, Rasūl, who tried to /158/ smoke a qalyan offered by his non-sectarian neighbour. He wished to visit Sultan Šahāk, with the help of one of the 72 pirs, but the former refused to admit him to the jam because he had been excommunicated. The participants of the jam protested saying that he donated every year 100 tunams worth of produce of his fields towards the māl-i Dāwūd, in addition to the māl-i jam. The answer to their pleading was that in the sharī'ī Banyāmīn it is all one whether a man smokes a qalyan or eats the flesh of the pig,—in either case he becomes excommunicated. Later on, however, the decision was altered, and the offender had to confess his sin, make a donation (nadhr-i miyādū), bring a nut (i.e. renew his initiation), and implore for forgiveness.

Some interesting details are given: Pir Banyāmīn ordered him to produce five oxen, five mans (about 35 lbs.) of rice, a single sheep and one nutmeg. /159/ The sheep was sacrificed (ceremonially) and cooked, and the nutmeg was used (for its purpose). Shaykh Rasūl held the skirt of Banyāmīn's dress, bowed to the jam, was forgiven (and re-admitted to the AH community). The story, just as the preceding one, most probably belongs to the time of Atīš Bek, as it is connected with smoking.

An Additional Chapter.

(Pp. 152-154). Some answers. An incident took place among the AH belonging to the Qara-Qoyunlu tribe.71 They sent an application to the Head of the Community (Sarkār-i Aqā), and he wrote to them as follows: /153/

Blood-money for a man in haqīqat is now somewhat higher than prescribed by the laws of sharī'at, and the actual amount depends on the generosity of the applicants.

71 Cf. the interesting remark by Minorsky (Min II, 40). The AH inhabitants of the khanat of Maku, on the Russo-Persian frontier in Adhar-bayjan, bear the same name, Qaraquyunlu. Personally I do not see any reason why this name should not be an ordinary tribal name, resembling quite incidentally that of the Turkoman dynasty (780-874/1378-1469).

AH-20
3. The Principles of Haqiqat (explained) at the Time of Sultan Sahnun.

"At the time of the jāma of Sultan Sahnun, Chichak's falcon became mad (or was killed, maqṣūl). 72

... Afterwards in Shahrizûr (Shahr-i Zhul), on the rock of Dizawar, Sultan Sahnun said to his followers: "O, friends (yârub), we must lay down the principles (qarār) 73 of haqiqat." Pir Banyâmîn said: "O, Lord of the Worlds, let us know, on what they are based". The Sultan of the World said: "The (basic) principle of haqiqat is that one must know that the Truth (i.e. God) is (omni) present and exists. In haqiqat the behaviour (adab) and rules of living (arkân) are based on the sense of fear (of God), or being ashamed (to do wrong before Him). A sin committed by a member of the AH community will be 74 a betrayal of the 72 religions. 75 He must always keep his eye, ear and tongue under control. Those who can perceive this will know that the Truth is continually present (as a witness of?) the actions of those who follow it (dā'în dar gudhar-i kast ki ahl-i Haqq bâshad). 76 The follower must see the Lord of the World as omnipresent. He must distinguish (correctly) between what is lawful, and what is unlawful (halâl ra' harâm). Never do what does not appear to thee to be right, for to do it is a real sin. It is thy wish that no one should act wrongly against thee, then see that thou also dost no wrong to anybody. (As has already been mentioned concerning

72 Possibly the Chichak mentioned here is the same person as the one referred to on pp. 69, 71, 72 of the text (Chichak-i râ-pak or markhâm).
73 It would be rather presumptuous to speak of a "terminology" in these texts. The author continually confuses igâr and qârâ. He uses such words as arâk and gânân, not qârâ, or qâ'ida, or 'âqîdâ, apparently out of the militant sectarian spirit. I therefore abstain from rendering qârâ or igâr by such terms as 'dogma or belief.
74 In the text: "will not be" (nu-bshak), which is an obvious slip.
75 The expression "72 faiths", haft-a dîm millah, here means the totality of all religions, for which haqiqat is the ideal.
76 Dar gudhar-i ... is a colloquial expression which is difficult to fix a philosophical theory. It means "turks, moves about".
the seven (varieties of) nafs)\textsuperscript{17} Whatever is prohibited (in haqiqat)—regard it as prohibited, and whatever is commanded,—do it, in order to become one of those contented ones (ahl-i gaddat). And be contented with whatever God has given thee.\textsuperscript{162/} One must never stretch one’s hand to take from another’s plate. And one must not take up from the earth a stick, cut on both sides because it surely has an owner. One should never annoy other people. This world is a workshop of God, what is right is His (?)\textsuperscript{18} Never cause vexation to any one, do not harm any one,—then do whatever thou wantst. For this reason is a gentle (laqif) man the follower of the Truth (AH). He is not worried, and does not cause worry to others. A man who does what has been commanded, avoids by this very act what has been prohibited. The Truth, the All-High, issues commandments, and he (who obeys these) is called ahl-i Haqq, while we are called “Abū Tālib,” i.e., the father of the disciple. Whoever becomes our follower (talib), he becomes our son, and we become his father, by God! Whoever has realised his own position has recognised God, as the Truth, the All-High, has said. Such is the stage attained by the pure and righteous ones.

The Pir of the covenant (Banyāmin) said to the “Centre”: “Let a covenant be concluded meanwhile to the effect that whoever follows these rules which have been explained above, and follows them in a manly way, in full sincerity, will be triumphant at the end. But that whoever follows them in blind imitation of others, will be for ever rejected”.\textsuperscript{163/}

In reply Sultān Şahāk referred to the Mīrāj of the Prophet, and to the 30,000 words which were revealed to him (emphasising these to be an unutterable mystery: not to be revealed to the ignorant). Ultimately Banyāmin asked where the laws of haqiqat should be laid, and the answer was: in Pardīwar. So they went there, and Dāwūd was ordered to build a wall. In Dawdān there lived a pir called Mīrāj. On hearing that Sultān Şahāk (sic)

\textsuperscript{17} This obviously refers to that lost portion of the work from which the present extract was made.

\textsuperscript{18} There is obviously a lacuna here, although the text is continuous in appearance.

had arrived in Pardīwar, he mounted a lion and with a snake in hand instead of a whip, he arrived at the bank of the Sirwān river, to have an interview with him. Sultān Şahāk ordered Dāwūd to meet him, arriving mounted on a wall instead of a horse, and this duty created an impression.\textsuperscript{79} Then Dāwūd was ordered to spread a carpet on the surface of the Sirwān river.\textsuperscript{164/} They sat on this, and the Sultan of the World suggested to his interviewer that he should order the Sirwān to stop noise. He then caught a fish by hand and offered it to his guest, and ultimately revived it.\textsuperscript{80} /165/

Pir Mikāl was converted, and the initiation ceremony was staged, with the inevitable sacrifice and distribution of meat to the jam.

Then Şāhab-kār said to Banyāmin; “thou be the pir, and I shall be tālib, handing over my head to thee in haqiqat.” (A very interesting ceremony is described): “Şāhab-kār rose and stood at the bottom of the jam (pān-i jam). Dāwūd distributed the jāwz (nutmeg) of the head of the King, and Banyāmin recited the prayer. Then Şāhab-kār touched the folds of Dāwūd’s dress, and bowed to the jam. Thereafter he returned to his seat, and ordered that Banyāmin be given ten more nuts. By his order first Banyāmin handed his head to the King, while Dāwūd distributed (his) nut. Banyāmin touched the folds of Dāwūd’s dress and bowed to the jam. After him Pir-i Mūsî handed his head to the King,\textsuperscript{166/} then Muṣṭafā and Razhār-i Sharī. Instead of her Muṣṭafā acted as a wākīl. After this the others also did the same, including Pirāfī (who suddenly re-emerges here). Thereafter the King said: “This maydān is the maydān of Murtaḍā ‘Ali. The institution (qarār) of the unutterable mystery is this: this sword is a substitute for Dha’l-fiqar; this nut is a substitute for the head; this coin with the inscription “There is no Deity except God,

\textsuperscript{79} The same miracle is ascribed in Asia Minor to Bekrash who goes to meet Ahmad Rufa’s. See Hasluck, “Christianity and Islam under the Sultans”, vol. 1, 84, and 289, who refers to Degréard, “Souvenirs de la Haute-Albanie” (Paris, 1901), p. 219.

\textsuperscript{80} This is a universally popular folklore theme. Cf. Hasluck, op. cit., 1, 248. Cf. fragments in Minn, 210-11.
Muhammad is His Apostle, 'Ali is the Associate of God', is the shehada of the Five Members of the Family (al-i 'abd), who are (present?) in the jam'. Whoever fails to observe this covenant (shart) will, on the day of the Resurrection remain at the back and be humiliated before the Green Banner on which will be written: "Help from God and Early Victory". But whoever steps on (this) maydan with sincerity, we shall belong to him, and he will belong to us, and we will give him protection in the hereafter, on the condition that he does not violate the basic principles (arkan).

Whoever has the desire to step on this maydan, thereby becoming a seeker after this bargain, must become a member of the body of the talib, bring a jama'i Shahi, and hand himself over. If he is righteous he will find peace, if he is not, he will receive punishment.

A few words are added on the subject of the persecutions which are experienced by the followers /167/ and which add to their spiritual capital; various moral virtues are advocated.

Banyamin asks about the difference between the principles (qarar) of haqiqat and shartat. "How do they conduct the (first) jam, and how did they kill the (first) sacrificial animal?"

Shahab-khur replies: "We have established (qarar dadi) a Ka'ba for the followers of haqiqat. If they follow the ritual (asad) of haqiqat, it will be the same as if they visit (Ka'ba?). Whether it be morning or evening, if five or more people, regardless of their number, join in the acceptance (iqrar) of haqiqat and (the following of) the shart-i Banyamin, and bring sweats, or any offering, food, or sacrifice (shakarana, niyaz, khdmat, qurbân), then we are with them. The jam is the Ka'ba of haqiqat. The followers, either men or women, should visit that Ka'ba, whether it be in the morning or evening. Thursday evening (shab-i jam'a) must not pass without a jam being held, and neither must the beginning of a new (lunar) month. You should make a complete ablution (ghuat) and don clean dress before coming to the jam.

81 Such coins (also used in the darwish initiation rites) are medallia silver coins bearing the Shi'ite kalima. Cf. above, p. 91.

No one should participate in the jam who does not carry out his duties (kast ki had-i lakhif na-bashad dar qarar-i jam na-nishnad). The sweets (shakarana, or should it be shukrana, offerings of thanksgiving?) of jam should be distributed to the participants first, then prayers should be offered, and only then should sweets be distributed to the absent members (ha birea-i jam). Even if a thousand persons participate in the jam, the sacrificial meat, shakaran, madhur-ni niyaz (various offerings) should be distributed in such a way that each participant should receive a share. The uninitiated persons (ki sar bo-rahi haqiqat na-dada) must not receive a share. The (meat of the) sacrificed animal, and the various offerings (madhur-ni niyaz) should be brought to the jam intact (muhir), /168/ for even if so much as a crumb has been withdrawn and is not served to the jam, (the whole) will never be entered into the secret-record (dastar-i batin), and will not be accepted. "Group-unions" (iqrar) in haqiqat (should consist of) two brothers and one sister, living far away from each other.

Pir Banyamin asked: 'When is the (reward for) good actions (khayri khdmat) done by (pesh-i) members of the AH coming?' —Shahab-khur replied: '(At) this stage (manzil) of haqiqat (the reward for) good actions is continually passed on from one dsm (incarnation) to the next with the view of (becoming final) in the hereafter. (In the latter) one will become a thousand (i.e. the reward will be thousand-fold?)'.

Pir Banyamin again asked: "What should be the qurbân (i.e. the animal suitable for sacrifice)"? Shahab-khur replied: "A male sheep, without defects bought from any (genuine) owner with the funds provided by the members of the AH congregation (jarme-i khdmat-i yristan). If the pir (?) cheats, stealing from the offerings (dakhil, obviously for dakhil-i khdmat bi-bunad), the offering will not be accepted.

The participants of the jam must sit in silence. The sacrifice should be made on Fridays only, in small quantities so that the community does not eat too much (ki lyristan air na-khurand). It should be treated as the blessing tokens (tabarruk) of the saints.
and the righteous. Man (or they, insān or ḩān?) will be reborn in human form (so that they may) know their truth (?). Whoever acts wrongly, is excommunicated from the AH, and will be reborn in the form of a dirty animal; he will ultimately go to Hell.

The Sayyids who do not comply with rules prescribed (ḥadd-i ṭabīf) to them, are not genuine. The daughter of a Sayyid cannot offer prayers (officiating at the jam), this is wrong. /169/

A Sayyid must always be a man, not a woman.

When a member of the AH community marries a woman, ḫāz-i šukrāna and /.../ (lacuna).

Pir Banyāmīn asked: "Are the seventy-two ṭārs coming?" Ṣāḥab-kār replied: "They are coming." (In fact) they arrived the same night, each from a different place. Ṣāḥab-kār kindly gave each one a ḫāz, and they handed over their heads (zar supurand) in accordance with the rules (qāṭār) of ḥaqiqat. Then Ṣāḥab-kār said: "Pir-i ṣharf, take them round the supernatural (lā-makān) world." Banyāmīn took them to the heavens, where they saw all sorts of extraordinary things, including Sultān Ṣhāhāk himself, sitting on a throne of ruby, etc., also the Panj Tan, and so forth. They returned much impressed.

"Wherever something is mentioned here about the customs (āādāb) of ḥaqiqat, it must be treated as an unutterable mystery." /170/ Banyāmīn explained to the members of the jam to whom the ṭārs narrated their exciting experience, that every one who wished to see the Šāh, had only to turn his head, for the Generous Šāh, the Mystery of Might, was present everywhere. And He was also in Lā-makān.

(An important passage copies next). Ṣāḥab-kār said: "A man turns up and is taken from the first day into the community (qāṭār) of the shārf-i Banyāmīn (i.e. is made a fully-fledged member of the jam), and hands over his head (i.e. receives initiation). A week later it becomes a source of humiliation (rā-siyāh) for him to sit according to the rules of the jam, from beginning to end. On account of what he has known and heard of the fancies of the orthodox and their teachings, he becomes mute and worthless (muḥr gurād). One should be absorbed in the thought of ḥaqiqat. The AH must close their eyes and preoccupy themselves with the dhikr of the profession of the Oneness of God (tawhīd) in complete silence (ṣukāt). Come to the jam (with) good actions (khayr-i khidmat). After the prayer do not think only of eating yourselves full of bread and water. To eat oneself full in the jam is a sin". (Five tristichs follow). /171/

Pir Banyāmīn asked: "What is the sign by which the AH may be distinguished from the followers of other religions?" Ṣāḥab-kār said: "At the time (dān) of Murtaḍa 'All it was agreed (qarār chūnīn bād) that whoever loved us would not clip his mustache... (and also would not) fast (i.e. not take bread or water). The AH must not smoke the qalīyān (water pipe). Both in ĵariqat and ḥaqiqat the rules were the same at that time. We have entered into an agreement (iqārāt daḏān) with Muhammad al-Muṣṭafā whereby we shall have nothing to do with whoever does not observe these three rules. These are the signs of belonging to the AH community (nīshān-i yārī). (Three tristichs are added). /172/

Once Ṣhāhāk was present everywhere. And He was also in Lā-makān.

Once late on the evening (swāq-t-i Dāwād) Khān Aṭish kindly told the four angels (jāsād) and the twelve khālīfān from the Delf tribe who were in his presence: "Come with me, let us walk into the garden". They all followed him. The story repeats

---

82 This rather difficult sentence apparently means that man (or human being generally, insān) is again re-incarnated in human form in order, to know the truth. But it is also possible to read the first word mān as ṭāhān, they, referring to the preceding sentence, to the pākān wa ṭāhān, the pure and righteous.
83 Cf. the text, p. 79, and comments on this passage, p. 126
84 This clearly shows that the AH were a proselytising community.
85 Here is obviously a lacuna, although in appearance the text is not interrupted.
86 Tobacco was apparently introduced in the East from Europe not before the XVII-th c. Therefore it is doubtful whether Sultān Šhāhāk could have discussed such matters.
87 The next story may be an incidental addition having nothing to do with the preceding extracts on the ḥaqiqat dogmas.
a part of the usual apotheosis narrative, connected with the celebration of the Festival. The four jāzād (angels) and the khalīfās /173/ were very much impressed, and stood overawed (?), 
—*dar sar-i pā'īn-i jam sar-i pā takbānd.*

The vision vanished. Again, as in the preceding versions, some people did not believe the story. Shāh Atish therefore created /174/ an additional vision for the seventy-two perspicuous Delfs. They were also very much impressed. After this comes the usual end: the vision vanished, Khān Atish was seen sitting alone, etc. /175/. Then all of them partook of a niydā, i.e. an ordinary (not sacrificial) communal meal, after which the participants left for their various districts in Luristan. But even there their narrative did not find much credence. This was reported to Khān Atish who said that everything depended on the souls of the followers. “Those who accepted me in pre-eternity will always remain faithful (*dar sar-i ighrār*), and we are with them. They will remain in this condition until the advent of the Mahdi”.

4. Extracts From Darwish Risālas.

Poems of Shaydā.

The poems of the darwish poet Shaydā,¹ which were formerly so often sung by darwishes in the bazars all over Persia, appear in practically all risālas. In the refrain of the poem edited here, the *bayt* verse, which is repeated after every two baysts, the *Ṣāhib sharf-i rāh-namā*; i.e. the one with whom the *sharaf*, covenant, was made, the spiritual guide-in-chief, i.e. Bānymān who is Salmān, is mentioned under the “darwish name”, Jánn, while *Mard-i Haqqānī* or *Haqqānī Pādzāhān*, or *Mard-i Ḥaqq*, is the Substance of ‘Ali, Dhāt-i Ḥaqqānī, the *Ṣāhib-dā다*, the Lord of the world. *Dāda* is the Persian equivalent of *ḥajj*, mentioned above. Bānymān kneaded the dust from which Adam was made in the image of Shāh Khūshin. /180/ Bānymān also instituted the *sharaf-i bayt*, i.e. the covenant of allegiance. It was recorded (witnessed) by Pir-i Mūsā, “When Dāwūd dived into Fire (Hell)², the King called him Shāh Ridā”, i.e. the great saint of Khorasan, ‘Ali ar-Ridā, the 8-th Imam of the Twelvers.³

“‘The “Seven” are, beginning with Mir Shāh, Ḥabib Hūsāyn (here called *pir-i Hindustān*), Ibrāhīm Shāh, Būl-Wafā, Muḥam-

¹ Judging from the fact that these poems are already found in some jungs dated about 1220/1805, it is possible that this poet, Shaydā, flourished probably not later than the closing of the Safawid period, or beginning of the Qajar times. In the *Mağmū‘l-Fusṣāya‘* (as obligingly copied for me by Prof. M. Mashkhūr, of the Tabriz University) two poets with the name Shāydā are mentioned: Shāydā-yi Isfahānī, Muḥammad-‘Alī, d. 1214/1800 (p. 249) and Shaydā-yi Yazdī, Abūl-Ḥasan, apparently a later contemporary of the preceding poet (p. 250). It is impossible to say whether the poems belong to one of these, and on the whole this seems doubtful because they are classed as *‘awānmān*, “popular”. The *Mağmū‘l-Fusṣāya‘* or *Risāla*-al-Manfūr would have been no place for our author.

² I have never been able to ascertain the details of the story to which this is an allusion.

³ ‘Ali ibn Mūsā b. Ja‘far, surnamed ar-Ridā, has become such a national saint and martyr in Persia that his original position is often overlooked by the less educated members of such sects as stand in opposition to the Ḥumṣ-i-ḥarshī dogma, e.g. the Ismā‘ilis.
mad, and Shihāb (u’d-din)”. “Serve (God) as Raḥwār (i.e. Razbār) served, in order to become safe from calamity and trouble.” “Know that the “cups”, i.e. the initiations, associated with the Chil Tan (Forty Men, the symbol of darwishism) are fifteen, and that there are 18 ḏūdās of ḥaqiq, poverty, i.e. 18 recognized affiliations of darwishes. Nūr-i Nihāl or Niqāb-dār is the same as (Salmān) Fārsī”. /181/ “The disciple of the King is Pir Bāyāmīn, and the one whom he followed was Shāh Khūshn. The first of the Chil Tan is Shihāb-u’d-din, (the last being) Mahmūd-i Pātīlī”. /4

Another poem by the same Shayān gives the origin (ṣīḥbāt, or establishment) of the 18 ḏūdās, referred to above: /182/ Jānī (Salmān), Zinda ‘Ali, Jānī-pākān (Bāyāmīn?), Nūr-Sultān, Mūsā-yi Dāniyāl, Jālāl-u’d-dīn (Ḥaydar, the eponym of the Khāsār or Jalālī darwishes). Jalaw-Khān, Dawlat-shikasta-mard-i Ḥaqq, Shāh Nūr, Miya (Miyan) Karyāl, Ibrāhīm Shāh, Zinda-Allī (cf. the second name immediately above), Maqsūd Khān, Nūrānī, Balū Tāhir, Husayn, Tāk-Sultān, Bihrūz, Jānī (again). Another version, begins with the 4-th name: Ḥurātī, Karyāl, Nūrālī, Jalaw-Khān, Tāk-Sultān, Sarmast, Shāh-Nihāl, Bihrūz-Khān, /183/ Balū Tāhir, Maqsūd-Khān, Jamāl-u’d-dīn Musā-yi Dāniyāl, Shāh Husayn, Pār-i Sultān. (All these are the ḥaqiqat names which obviously belong to important šīḏ Sayyids, probably descendants of Sultān Šahāk). /7

The Origin of the “Forty Men” of Light (Chil-tan-i Nūr).

The Chil-Tan, proto-darwishes, form the symbol of darwishism generally, and the focus of the myths dealing with the origin of all their customs, practices, paraphernalia, etc. The “forty” constitute

---

4 These are obviously the Ḥaft ‘ʿaṭāts, the miraculous sons of Sultan Šahāk. Their names are not infrequently vary in different lists.
5 Guran is a typically darwish word.
6 The implications of these names are explained later.
7 The indubitable traces of contact with India apparently belong to fairly modern times, as has been explained above, cf. p. 67.

---

a supernatural and cosmic category, the “Forty of Light”, and have their counterpart in the “earthly” Chil-tan-i Khātī (cf. further on). This myth has a great number of variants. Here it is taken from the risāla which belonged to a learned darwish of Kishapur, Nūr-Allī, who died in 1920.

“The Chil-tan-i Nūr were of the Light of Mawla-āl ‘Ali. Their head was Sultan Mahmūd (Pātīlī), and their last, “scal”, was Jānī (Salmān)”. These holy Forty have become manifested in a great many places, and are still being manifested. Their light is that of the Sainthood of Mawla.”

On the night of the Miẓār the Prophet arrives at a domed building from one piece of emerald. . . /184/ He knocks at the door, and on being asked who he is, says that he is the Prophet, whereupon he is refused admittance. Jabrāllāh appears and instructs him. He explains that “the purpose (murād) of the cupola is the Dāde Rawshan-Allī; that the murād of its door is La’l Shāh-bāz Qalandar; that the murād of the handle of the door is Jānī, and that of its custodian (shahāna) is Nūr-i Nihāl, while the owner of the house is Mir Shīr Shāh Sayyid Jalāl Bukhārāī.” /8

The Prophet humbly calls himself “the servant of the poor”, (khādim-ul-faqārā) and is admitted. He sees the inmates (who were all naked), and in answer to his question is told that they are mendicants, faqīres. The Prophet takes off his turban, tears it into pieces, and gives each one a piece to tie round his loins. (In another version: a piece of home made cotton cloth, karbās, appears from nowhere, and is similarly distributed to make lungas); /185/ the first piece was given to Shāh Mahmūd-i Pātīlī. The names of the Forty (incomplete series) are given below in the text. It should be added that such lists always vary. Their constant elements are: the saints of ḥaqiqat, some famous popular darwish saints, and the rest made up of symbolic names representing cosmic ideas or forces of nature, etc., such as ushūr-‘abdāl—earth, surkh-‘abdāl—fire, qāhir-‘abdāl—wind, etc. (Sometimes instead of ‘abdāl or ‘abdāl the word ‘Ali is used: Surkh-‘Ali, Qāhir-‘Ali, etc.).

---

8 Cf. above, p. 62.
The Origin of the “Earthly Forty” (from the risâla of darwish Parwâna-Ali Subzawârî, d. ca. 1900, an almost illiterate man; the entries in his risâla were made by different people).

At the time of the birth of the Prophet Muhammad the Jews read in their religious books a prophecy regarding his impending birth, and decided to kill him (this is simply a variant of the Christian legend of the “Massacre of Innocents”). His nurse, however, had a child herself, called Sultan Mahmûd. She laid him in the Prophet’s cradle, so that he was cut into pieces which were then put into a cauldron (łatîl), and thrown behind a mosque (sâh). By the miracle of God each of these pieces became a child in itself. These were hidden and brought up in a cave being fed by a gazelle (ṭâhâ). (When they grew up they began to wander about living on people’s charitable donations, thus founding the darwish association).

Additions: The same legend is narrated amongst the AH about the saint whom they call Nuṣâyr (who has nothing to do with the saint of that name amongst the Nuṣayris of Syria). Here is another variant of their origin: a woman at the time of the Prophet came to him, asking for medicine against sterility. The Prophet (acting in the same way, as a darwish or village mulla), wrote a charm on a piece of paper, instructing her to wash it in water, and drink it. The woman did not trust this method, and put the paper aside. She then came again, asking for another medicine, and again a paper with the efficacious text was dispensed. So it happened for forty times. At last the woman decided to try the treatment, and swallowed all forty doses at once. As a punishment for her incredulity, she gave birth to forty children, and fearing publicity, she took them out of the village, and abandoned them. But, being the result of the prayer of the Prophet, the children were under Divine protection, and were brought up by the ḍâhâ. (In some versions instead of slips of paper dates are given one by one).

This myth sometimes has a valuable addition: When these children grew up, still wild, they became a real nuisance to the neighbourhood, and the people decided to exterminate them. But God sent a plague upon these unkind people, and only in response to the prayer of a holy man the plague turned into a black cat. The Forty, being hungry, rushed upon the cat, tore it to pieces and devoured it. This is why the darwishes, ḡūbrâ, are known as ḏâhâ-khir, i.e. “devourers of calamity”. They were left in peace and remained thereafter.

The Risâla of darwish Gulpîr Sabrawârî, a member of a respectable local family, who died before 1900, contains the text of several AH prayers (pp. 187-190). Another very interesting document is the certificate of initiation of a darwish of a higher degree into the AH doctrine.

“About the Creation. Know that in those days (râst) when there was still no earth and no sky, the King of the World was a pearl (or: Substance jâwâr) in the middle of a shell. Thereafter, He threw with His hand of Divine might a drop of His own substance (jâwâr, non-Divine substance (â’ââ) and the jâwâr settled in the interior of the jâwâr (dâr bâni-jâwâr). He uttered a cry, and water appeared, producing skies from its vapours and earth from its foam. Later He created Banyâmin from h-n-y (buni, bun-i?)9. The King then said: “Come, let us lay the foundation of the institution of the pîr-un muridî”, i.e. of spiritual guidance and its acceptance. Pir Banyâmin said: “You are the King and the pîr, while I am a murid.” The King of the World replied: “If I become the pîr, thou wilt not be able (to carry out my orders), thou hast not the power which is with Me. Therefore I shall be thy murid, acting as thy slave, and thou wilt be My pîr. Therefore thou art a pîr, and I

9 The play on the difference between jâwâr and jâwâr, which are in reality one and the same word, is a substitute for “deep philosophy” It already appears in the Umma’r, dâwâb, or unit, mânûn, etc. Or is it here simply an “etymological” explanation, from Buni, the first part of the name, which is often written Buni, mana?
am a **murid**, a slave and an obedient servant. I shall act according to thy wishes."

The King of the World created Dāwūd from one of His sleeves, instructing him to be a witness of His having appointed Pir-i Amin (i.e. Banyāmin) the spiritual guide and king of "My people" (qawwāl-i īhād), and having accepted him (as His pir).

Dāwūd asked: "What shall be my position as a witness?" The King said: "I make thee the guide and helper in adversity of every one on land and sea." Dāwūd asked for a witness and the Deity created Pir-i Mūsī from one of the hairs (mū) of His head, instructing him to be the witness of His having appointed Dāwūd as helper to every one in difficulties on land or sea.

Pir-i Mūsī also asked what his position was to be, and was appointed the scribe (qalamzan). He also wanted a witness, and the King created from His seal ring (mulhr) Mīr Musṭafā, instructing him to be a witness of the preceding appointments. Mīr Musṭafā also wanted to know his functions, and was appointed the catcher (qalād) of souls (arwāh). He also asked for a witness, and the King created a thousand slaves with golden belts, who became the witnesses. Some more then were created to serve as witnesses for the first thousand.

They then formed a jamā', the King of the World (from His own sweat) created a jace, nutmeg, which was broken before Pir Banyāmin, and thus the King handed over His head to His Pir, i.e. Banyāmin. Thus all of them were made in the world of ideas (ʿalam-i maʿnā) from one substance (gawāhr) the name of which was Zard Gil, i.e. "Yellow clay".

The King ultimately decided to create Adam, and ordered Mīr (sie) Musṭafā to pick up 4 handfuls of dust from all the four corners of the world. He brought it, but despite all his efforts the clay would not mix well. Then the King of the World ordered: "Bring that deposit (amānat) which I entrusted to you thirty thousand years ago..."

Unfortunately, here, as in other known texts, there is a lacuna. It is possible that it is not long and, perhaps, has something to do with Satan.

"...a thousand years before I entrusted to thee, bring it." Thereafter they brought the amānat, or deposited thing, mixed it with the dust, and made a figure, i.e. Adam. Four years later Adam sneezed, and rose. The King of the World then gave him that amānat. "We shall return to its meaning (ba-rumā-ash bi-rasim)."

30,000 years more (the Deity) was saying "subhāna-hu". For some time He was also in the dress (hūs) of Adam. Then He wished "to set" (ghurūb, i.e. to disappear). His associates (yarān) asked Him where they should find Him, and He replied: "In the middle of seven princes." They asked Him the names, and He answered: "One of them, the greatest one, is named Hāji Sultan Bā'ūs. The others are: Sayyid Mahmūd Gawār, Sayyid Habīb, Shāh Sayyid Būl-Wāfā, Sayyid Shihābud-din, Pir Musṭafā, Bābā Yādgār. Although the last one is the smallest in appearance, he is the greatest in reality (dār bāfīn), the most important of all these princes". Here banners were made, seven in number, before the entrance porch of Mahmūd Dinishqī. Each prince received a banner, and went to a different place or province. Hāji Bā'ūs went to Kūhīstān, Sayyid Habīb to Kurdistān, Sayyid Mahmūd to Ardabil. Mīr to Turkestān, Sayyid Shihābud-din to Rūm (Asia Minor), Musṭafā to Lurisīstān. Mīr, who went to Turkestān, was a mir there, but elsewhere he was a king (šah). In India he was in human form, in Afghanistan he was Shāh Shīr. In some places he was an amīr.

11 Usually instead of "created" the expression "brought out of his sleeve" is used.


14 It is not clear who this saint was. A banner is usually fixed near the entrance of a saint's mausoleum.

15 In the text, - Ġūnīstān, i.e. cemetery, probably a slip for Ġūrīstān, Georgia.

16 All this is merely talk which has no historical meaning.
His shari'a name was Ḥusayn, his ṭarīqat name was Shāh Sayyid Jalāl, his ḥāğiqat name was Mīr, and his ma'rifat name was Pīr.

Thus the King of the World intended to set (in the same way as the sun sets, ghurāb kuno'd), and the associates, yārān, asked him where they should expect to meet him, and what his sign would be? The King of the World answered: "You should expect me on the Festival of the New Year (Nawrūz) in the land of Sultāniyya. A place will appear on the Jayhūn, from the East to the West. All will come together there, all the sultans, and I shall manifest myself there". They asked: "What shall be the sign of your (impending) manifestation?" He said: "Three days I shall rise (as) the sun," and on the thirteenth day after the Festival of Nawrūz I shall manifest myself in the land of "Ṭāṭākiyya" (Antakya, Antioch?). Twelve occupants of thrones will come together at that place, one Khāwāndgār, another Shāh Pīr Bānyāmin, the third Dāwūd, the fourth Pīr-i Mūsā-yi Qalām-Zatrīn, Muṣṭafā-yi Dāwūdān, Qirmizī-Piš, Kāhān-Āṭīr, Nūr Sultān, Sarmast, Shāh Nīmatu'llāh Wali, Shāh Sayyid Jalālud-dīn Ḥaydar, and the twelfth Sultān......".

/195/ "Sayyid Shihābudd din is buried in Qaradagh, in Āhar. He was the grandfather of Sayyid Jabra'il, of Shaykh Šafīyyud-dīn and Shāh Ismā'il, who was the substance of 'Ali Qalandar. The first ( ) is the spring of ḥāğiqat which is called Ardabil."

Sarmad appeared amongst the Jews of Kāshān. He was converted to Islam in the middle of his life. He spent fourteen years travelling naked in the guise of a qalandar. His journey brought him to Delhi in India during the reign of Muḥammad Dārā Shikōh (who was the substance of Ibrāhīm Aḥsan). After the death of that Sultan, the qādī of the town, together with the brother of the deceased, decided to execute Sarmad, charging him (with misbehaving by) walking naked, and with never reciting the formula "There is no Deity except Allah" to its end. He answered: "(Mine) is the life which is an echo of the old Maṣnūr, I shall re-appear (jelaq diham) from thy head.....His head was struck off".

"Sultān Muḥammad-i Ghaznavi and Ayāz, the pure-natured. Sultān Muḥammad was a manifestation of Šāhāb-karam (Mowah) and Ayāz was the manifestation (dūn) of Pīr Bānyāmin. When he wanted to disappear from Rūm (Asia Minor), he (Muḥammad) said to Pīr Bānyāmin: "go /196/ to India, and I shall go to Khwārizm. I shall re-appear in a baker's shop (niwāt) and rise to sultanship. I shall move troops for the conquest of India, and will conquer it. There we shall meet again. And so it has happened".

The first jam' belonged to Bānyāmin, /199/ the second to Sayyid Muṣṭafā, the third belonged to the King (mal-i Pādshāh).

The Dast-gūr, helper, is Shāh Ibrāhīm. The head (zarbalqā) of the Hāft-tān (Seven saints) is Sayyid Muḥammad Gāwre-Sūwār. It is his banner (alām) which will be unfurled (in the world). The mystery of Ḥaqqānī is (hidden) in Dālahū. Sultān-i ma'rifat or Sultān-i haqq is Shāh Khūshān. He came (?) from a boat on the sea (az markab-i-daryā būd). These words of

---

21 This passage is obviously written by someone belonging to the Shāh Ibrāhīm āḏār.
22 According to Minorsky's informers (MinI, 49), Shāh Ibrāhīm was a grandson of Sultan Šahīk, the son of Sayyid Muḥammad. The Dālahū hills are not far from Pārdīwar, according to Minorsky's map.
the Pir (Kalâm-i Pir) which have been mentioned (?) were the words of Shâh Ibrâhîm, and this matter will be mentioned (only) in the place in which the jam' of Shâh Ibrâhîm will be held. They are the words of the Pir (uttered) in order that the mystery should not be divulged. And we also pray that this (mystery) will not be disclosed, except amongst the initiated (magâr ba-yâk-rangī).

Appendix I. Miracles of Khan Atish.

In 1948, in Tehran, an AH friend lent me a book which, he said, belonged to the literature of his community. On examination it proved to be a lithographed edition of a well-known work on astrology, Jamasp-nama, which presented no interest whatever. While looking through the volume, however, I found some notes scribbled on the fly-leaves which referred to certain miracles of Khan Atish and also to what appeared to be his farewell address to his followers. The most important feature, however, was that the notes contained the dates of the events. How unfortunate it was then that the notes, probably written before being bound together with the book, came to be used simply as binding material. They were scribbled in faded ink on sheets of thin coloured paper. The text was often rendered illegible by greasy stains. The sheets were bound without any order, much appeared to be lost, and portions of them had been cut off in the process of binding.

It would appear that the bulk of them had at one time contained the well-known prophecies of Ni'matul-lâh Wali of Kirmân, to which the sermons of Khan Atish obviously imitating them, had been added. Finally, some witness records were included of the miracles of the saint.

The copyist (perhaps also the compiler or compilers) wrote in childish handwriting, committing atrocious errors in spelling (which have here been corrected as far as possible). It is obviously impossible to find out whether or not the notes are genuine. But it is difficult to believe that anyone capable of counterfeiting the tone, spirit and language here presented would not have been able to aim higher had he tried.

All that was possible to offer here as presenting some interest consisted of five fragments: 1 and 2, which obviously refer to one and the same event (on the 7th of Rajab 1082/9-xi-1671), two versions of a witness record; 3, two fragments apparently from one and the same address of Khan Atish; and 4 and 5, fragments obviously from his farewell address, probably in 1114/1702-3. Geographical names mentioned in the text are badly mis-spelt, so that it has not been easy to reconstruct them even with the help of the official Persian publication, Farhang-i Jughdrîyâ-yi Iran (vol. IV, Adharbayjan), to which references are here given. It is, of course, quite possible that many names have changed or disappeared over the course of the last 250 years.

Translation.

1. Khan Atish walks into the (burning) field of reeds. He ordered us to set fire to the field overgrown with reeds (nayzâr). We were assembled there to the number of 150 and three. By the order of (our) Lord we set fire to the reeds. It was in the evening, in the month of Rajab, on the seventh (day) of the month, in 1082 (i.e. 9-xi-1671). (When he went into the fire) all of us who were present felt that all hope was lost, as for the holy one. We spent the night near the fire. Towards afternoon on the next day we gave up all hope, and decided to return home. (Some)1 said: "We shall pitch our tents (here) and stay". Thus two parties were formed, one in favour of returning home, and the other of staying. As we were discussing thus the Lord stepped out of the fire. He was dressed in red, holding a bunch of flowers in seven colours in his blessed hand, and smiling. We all prostrated ourselves before him. (Later) we applied our seals and wrote an (eye-witness) testimony, unanimously testifying (to the genuineness of the miracle of) the Lord. We immolated sacrificial animals, and stayed at the place for seven days.

1 A strange expression, apparently referring to the pious and patient followers, which in a slightly different form re-appears in the next fragment. Here it is something like ab-ash wa na ri wafatî (I), and in the next paragraph: yâyâ wa ab-ash wafatî.
2. (Another version). In the year 1082, in the place called Đaharr, in the gorge of Đashlija (Đashlija?); there was a large field overgrown with reeds (nayeṛ). We, the men of Đahlani tribe, 500 families in all; we, the men of the Kāni tribe, four families in all, we, the men of the Khāzayman (here: Khāza-i-maq or Khurda-i-maq); thirty families in all, and we, the men of the Đalikani tribe, fifty families in all, were there. A place within the gorge was overgrown with (dry) reeds. Our Lord ordered us to gather firewood. We obeyed and collected and unloaded it in the nayeṛ. He then ordered us to set fire to it, which we did. The Lord walked into the fire. Evening fell, and he had not yet come out. We lost all hope. At night much talk arose amongst the tribesmen who wanted to return. (Some) said: "We shall not leave". We remained near the fire in the reed-field through the whole night, till morning. In the afternoon of the next day the Lord emerged from the midst of the fire, dressed in red, carrying several bunches of flowers in his blessed hands. We remained there for seven days. We have written (this testimony) and applied our seals to it.

3. "I told you in 1080 (1669-1670), and I am telling you now: Listen you, people who are with me, keep your ears open!"—And about 4000 (who were present there) appealed: "O, our Lord! O, healer of our ailments! Know (that) our ears and eyes are at thy service! Whatever thou wilt order, we shall obey thee sincerely and wholeheartedly." Then he said: "As oppression and violence have gone beyond all limits, no one will have the strength to endure it. And when still more oppression comes, a person will appear from the East, and will fight them . . . ."

..."I, Khān Ātish, said to you in 1083/1672-1673, in Qarāchay, of the Marahga district Jān-Jān-har (?)... "I am going, and will return according to (a given) sign. Formerly I came in the person (ān) of Jān . . . ." I said (this) and went, and returned, and I shall return again at the time when Irān becomes the most pleasant of all the countries (shahr-hāt) on earth. It will be the time when I become the owner of the "village of Ātish Bek." This is one of the signs (of my advent). The other sign is that I shall return with those people who are with me (now). When justice and equity will be established (?), when men will have no religion (?). I shall introduce a rule for their comfort . . . .

---

2 No Đashlija is mentioned in the Farhang, although there are two Đashlijas. They, however, are out of the question because one is near Āhar and the other near Ardabīl (vol. IV, p. 208).

8 This obviously does not mean that whole families were present, men, women and children, but rather men representing so many families.

4 The Farhang does not mention anything like this. Perhaps the name should be read Khāṣṭ-aymāq.

8 The Farhang (IV, 79) only mentions Đalikān, a small Kurdish village in the district of Khūr, which would hardly be correct here. It should be noted that tribal names, even those of large tribal groups, are frequently changed.

10 See above, footnote 1.
4. The departure of Khan Atish. In 1114/1702-3, in Sahand, near the spring of Pâyindûrûd, which is in the district of Shâh-yûrd, Khan Atish arrived with all his Mîrs (heads) of 'ajûz (Mîr-'ajûz): Mîr Jahângir Bek, Mîr Sarâkhsîsh Bek, Mîr Imâm-'Ali (Imâm-Quli?) Khan, Mîr Muhammadd Bek, Mîr Farâju'llah Bek, Sadik Khan the head (zâr-kard) of the Shakâkî tribe, Muhammad-'Ali (another) assistant to the manager of the blessed stables, and Muhammad Khan, the head (jâlam-dûr) of the same, also all the Shakâkîs settled (mâkân nazar) in the district of Qûrî-chây and the hamlets of what is called the "village (dîh) of Atish Bek."

5. ....know now, O, all who are with me here, men and women, witness to each other and say to all the worlds and testify to each other what I am doing. Now you are standing in the land of the (great) tidings, near the range of Sahand. And this land is the holy land of Shâh-yûrd. Say and testify that I intend to go, disappearing from your sight on this blue (kabûd) horse which I am riding. This horse, and the red riding boots will remain as souvenirs with you. I am Adam, I am Noah, and also I am Moses, I am Jesus, and I am 'Ali. I shall return when the whole (khûd) "village of Atish Bek" becomes my property,—I shall put in order your affairs. I have put my hand into the water of this spring here, on the top of Sahand, which will remain as my souvenir to you. I am leaving this book with you, so that my advent may be known to you. I have foretold the destinies of the world with (all the) sultans, to its end, as I have also told you before. It (the book?) is with my sons. But you must understand: the wise (already) know, but the rest of you must also know this. You will know how the page (mâraq) will be (??) I have told you from the beginning what (??) was four thousand years ago, and till the time when all peoples become united. No one will feel hostility against any one, and all people will be united, the king and the beggar. Note this, so that your descendants may not act adversely, one generation after another. O, Incarnations, you that are coming soon and later, I am going...thou art and wilt come before myself...And, note this date: I went in 1114/1702-3. I am telling you: there will come a sultan with a long beard, after him a sultan who has no beard, then will come a sultan with a dropping (dar-rafa') moustache. This is the sign of the new skies and of the new earth. Regard those of the Qalâ'ibân (??) tribe as your enemies. The time will come when people will wish to be dead, but will be unable to achieve death. And there will be horses which are... (beautifully?) caparisoned, with crowns on their heads... and their faces like the faces of men, and their hair long as the hair of women, their teeth like the teeth of lions, and the sound of their steps like the sound of many vehicles when they gallop into battle. Their tails will be like the tails of scorpions, ending in something like a spear....

...I am going but will return according to the signs and the word (as I have said). The time will be neither longer nor shorter till my return... (I shall come with new laws and a new religion, and... till the time when I come, filling the world with justice and equity, and...)

12 One meaning could be: you will know what card will turn out.
13 Beginning with this passage the text is fragmentary as the ends of lines were cut off. It is strange that the word dan-hâ is written without a waw, and it is not clear whether divine Incarnations are meant, or those of ordinary mortals.
14 It is not clear who is "thou".
15 Surely in mediaeval warfare there were no chariots to gallop into battle. This, and the following phrase "tails of scorpions" bring to mind ancient Persian bas-reliefs. It is quite possible that such Apocalyptic visions are of book origin.
16 The words in parentheses, see footnote 7, may be misplaced, and have belonged originally to fragment 3.
Appendix II. The Story of Sayyid Iskandar.

An interesting story, not to be found in our texts, is contained in Min'I, 3-4. Its purpose is obviously to stress the severity of punishment meted out for the violation of the sanctity of jam, and also to commend the exemplary devotion of a certain Sayyid Iskandar who volunteered to suffer capital punishment which the offence, committed by his friend, deserved. The story is instructive in many respects, and it is fortunate that Prof. V. Minorsky has published the original text (Min'I, 115) as one of the specimen extracts in his book. He himself attaches great importance to it and as the text is available, it would be useful to offer a translation here.

There are, however, many points in connection with this story which evoke serious doubt, not of its genuineness, but of the spirit in which it should be accepted.

1. Since 1918 I have made inquiries about it and its real purpose of all the sectarians I have met in the different parts of Persia. Their answers to my questions have been the same, to the effect that the name of Sayyid Iskandar is unknown, and his story not heard before. This may indicate that the story has strictly local currency, limited to the particular community from which it originates.

2. In Min'I, 3-4 it appears to refer to Sultân Şahâk's time. Its general tone, however, the use of the Turkish language, the motif of the human sacrifice implied,—all point rather to Khân Atish's time. This finds support to an extent in the fact that the Incarnation, whose name does not appear in the text, is styled Şâh or Pâdshâh-i 'Alam, while the usual title of Sultân Şahâk is Sultân-i 'Alam.

3. It is difficult to become reconciled to the idea that hadrat-i Mustâfâ, the offender here, is also Mustâfâ-yi Dâwûdân, because twice in the course of the story the "four angels" (thus including Mustâfâ-yi Dâwûdân) are mentioned independently. It would be strange if the offender himself should be amongst those who intercede on his behalf. Mustâfâ-yi Dâwûdân could not have
Praise to the King of the World.

Chapter.

Know why a khidmat (communal meal) was ordered for (the commemoration of) Sayyid Iskandar. The four angels with the wise ones (dhlus-dar) and the (ordinary) followers of the Divine Truth (ahi-i Haqq) sat in the assembly (nazlis) presided over by the King of the World. They sung tristichs (kalam tas-gufand), and hadrat-i Mustafâ was moving amongst them (while serving the jam). The participants were absorbed in listening to the recitation and partaking of the meal of friendship (khdmat-i yari). It so happened by the will of the Sahabkar that a woman who was present had thought: "How nice it would be if hadrat-i Mustafâ was my husband— I would like that!" Mustafà understood her thought, and, placing his hand over her eye (a gesture of consent and obedience), said: "Why not?"

This was noticed by the King of the World, and his blessed decision was that someone would give up his life for (dar râh-i) the King of the World. When the jam was completed and the participants had dispersed, the King of the World ordered water to be brought, and when it was made ready, said: "Mustafà, wash thy beard (jamjal)".1 Obeying the order of the King of the World, Mustafà washed. By the perfect might of the Creator he at once heard a rustling sound (nâzîf), as all his mubâhin, i.e. beard and moustache, fell down. He became (therefore) excommunicated. He went to his apâr sister, who was hadrat-i Razhâr, and they made...2 However much they implored the King of the World,

1 The real "kaqat beards", especially in Lutistan, often attain awe-inspiring size, and invariably badly need washing after a copious meal, although the owner may not be aware of this. The word jamjal here obviously stands for jamjal mandan (often used in the Ta'lihna). The loss of moustache automatically leads to excommunication.
2 Not sautil, as in the printed text. It was left without diacritical dots probably because the copyist did not understand it. Nauf, whisper, rustling, is rarely used in ordinary Persian.
3 An unintelligible expression.
4 Read 'arwis for 'uris.
5 Sard oshand, sard namidand, are old darwish "jargonic" expressions, already to be found in some works of the XI-th c. A.D. They are based on the idea of the sprouting seed. The meaning is "becoming completed, attained, done with, realized", etc. Here sard namidand implies: did with it what should have been done.
interesting article, by N. Arseniev, “Eucharist Sacrament in the Church Practice” (“Problems of the Russian Religious Outlook”, Berlin, 1924, pp. 346-389, in Russian). In it certain aspects of the early history of the Eucharist are discussed which may be of value in the present study. It is to be deplored that none of the learned works quoted by the author, on the history of early Christian churches, are available in the libraries of Boğhay for direct reference.

The strange story (T 9-10), already discussed on pp. 43-44, of the sudden appearance of the “pure substance of Razbár”, and her offering a loaf of kulíčka bread (produced by her from the sea) to the Creator who sat with his four associate angels on the surface of the primordial ocean, is a cluster of half obliterated myths of mixed origin. The Creator orders an įam to be formed at which the loaf is ritually distributed, and this act is of such immense cosmic significance that the earth, which was floating on the waters, is stabilized and the loaf itself becomes the sky. It has been already suggested that the part attributed to the kulíčka loaf in the story can only be traced to Christian beliefs connected with the Eucharist. This finds complete confirmation in the fact that the earliest Christian liturgical texts preserved emphasis on the cosmic role of the events symbolised in the Sacrament. This is prominent in the Didaché (or “Instruction of the 12 Apostles”, a work of the first c. A.D.), the liturgy of Clement, Anaphora Serapionis, etc.

The complex of the myths which form the idea of the Eucharist includes the Jewish motif of Christ as a scapegoat for the sins of humanity. But there is also another, predominating the rest, of his being a sacrifice, a sheep or lamb, Agnus Dei, inmolated for the expiation of the world’s imperfection generally. This also contains a certain element introduced by the early controversies against the doctrines of various gnostic sects in their speculations about the material world being evil because it was created by the Demiourge, the Evil God. Therefore orthodox church authors, especially Irenaeus of Lyon (d. ca. 200 A.D.) in his “Adversus Haereses”, emphasised that the matter was not essentially evil. This is reflected in the prayers recited at the climax of the Eucharist ceremony, the anaphora (as in the liturgies of Clement, of the churches of Egypt, Ethiopia, Syrian of St. Jacob, of Basil the Great, etc.). Prayers were offered not only for the welfare of different categories of human beings, but also various aspects of the material world. In the ancient anaphora used in the early Persian church it is prayed that the whole of the created world may be filled with the oros of Divine benevolence.

The possibility of the independent origin of similar prayers being recited at similar ceremonies in both religions, surely, cannot be excluded. But there is obviously more chance of such coincidence being the result of incidental borrowing or imitation. The question of precedence is difficult to determine. Traditional Zoroastrianism shows much the same mentality as the AH in claiming fantastic antiquity, which cannot stand historical criticism, for its saints, scriptures and institutions. Although the Vispered contains ancient elements, in the version in which we see it now, it may have been modified under the later Sasanian patronage of Zoroastrianism.² We must remember that certain portions of the Avesta are not older than the tenth c. A.D. The usual pretences to “eternity and inchangeability” are mere talk, the priestly stock in trade.

If it could be proved that the darwish khusba goes back not to the Mazdaic, but Christian practice, this would match well with the “single raisin”, incidentally found in the pocket of the Prophet on the night of Měrãj, to sweeten a cup of water to make it the shuhbat-i tawûzī which was offered by him as a kind of communion to the mystical “Forty”.

V. CRITICISMS, EMENDATIONS AND CORRECTIONS OF THE TEXT.

The methodology of the critical edition of Oriental texts is, as is well known, entirely based on meticulous comparative analysis of variants offered by several copies of one and the same work, and careful consideration of their merits. When the copy of the work intended to be edited is unique, the whole technique is completely upset. But the worst is the situation with works belonging to popular literature, products of the literary activities of uneducated authors, as is the case with the texts edited in this volume. They present almost unsurmountable difficulties as compared with the normal procedure.

With the works by highly qualified authors, the editor familiar with the outlines of the subject would not find much difficulty in ascertaining the prototypes or models followed by the compiler, the origin-of his general manner, characteristics of the language, and so forth. The uneducated author, especially of a secret sectarian work, rarely continues any established tradition. He has to struggle with the form of his work as much as with the planning and systematising of the contents. The lack of literary experience makes him to seek help in the standardised phraseology of a kind familiar to him, but having no connection with the subject of his work. In our case it is the language of the official or business correspondence of a low order which so often entirely perverts the tone and spirit of the narrative, sometimes making it sound ridiculous. We may admire the efforts and adventurous spirit of these unknown but talented authors, but their numerous errors and technical faults often create great difficulty to the understanding of their works.

Sectarian works which are kept secret from the uninitiated are rarely copied, and if this is done, it is mostly treated as a meritorious religious act rather than an attempt at getting a correct and reliable copy for information. Copying is going slowly, being very often interrupted, errors are rarely corrected. But it not rarely happens that even if corrections are made they are not taken into account. The idea that a word or passage crossed in the original should be omitted in copying still has no universal recognition. Very often a pious copyist would write both the wrong crossed word and the correct one side by side. Being unaccustomed to concentrating his attention for a long stretch of time such copyists can omit words, even whole lines or paragraphs, or write them twice. This is in addition to the inevitable errors in spelling, ungrammatical sentences, irruption of local dialect or "slang", and so forth.

The editor of such texts often finds himself confronted with problems which are not easy to solve, as to the limit to which such obvious errors should be tacitly corrected, or included into the final text on the plea of their possible value from the philological standpoint.

The present absurdly high cost of printing often compels the publishers to use lithography, and this is a great source of errors. When the text is "laid" upon the lithographical stone, it usually happens that portions of the page, even isolated lines or words, remain too faint, and have to be "strengthened" by the application of ink by hand. The worker who does this has no idea of the subject, or even language of the text. He mechanically adds ink to the faint traces, and in the process may add new dots or lines or disregard those which have to be strengthened. The worst part of this is the habit to continue such "correction" even after the final proof. The students who would like to analyse the texts edited here would do well if they take note of the emendations suggested here before they proceed with their study.

1. 8. Khud-râ ba-qâwif ba-ṣūrat-i Ahûl'-Bushar. It looks as if ba-qâwif was the original intention of the author, which he replaced with ba-ṣūrat, absentmindedly forgetting to cancel the preceding.

1, 9. After sayyid it would be better to add -râ.

1', 17. Har kâs is a colloquialism, Should be har kast kî.

2, 5. If the bayt quoted just above is explained here, one would expect na after ãngâh as khûd.

2, 11. Should it be shâhid-i mashhûd, or shâhid-i mashhûd?

2, 12. Should be li-kullî (shay'în) fa'âl.
2, 16. Note that archaic form mar-ghalib-rā, quite out of tune with the low class colloquial style of the text.
1, 17. Shinakht ba-haq, instead of shinakht-i haqq, as one would expect, is probably a colloquial way of giving shinakht a passive meaning: (condition of) being informed of the Truth.
3, 3. Instead of wa qad read faqad. In the original: *wa man, due to absent mindedness.
3, 5. Wa after na-shinā, as in the original, is superfluous.
3, 14 and 3, 15. Ham-chi is a colloquialism for ham-chā.
3, 17-4, 1. The sentence bears traces of absent mindedness. On 4, 1 tā is obviously superfluous, and it is necessary to read further: bar na-kht zad wa.
4, 2. There is no interruption in the text. All these speculations obviously were beyond the author's means of expressing himself.
5, 1. For zabān, as in the original, read zabānt. For ham better read na't.
5, 6. For ki read clāh. Perhaps the author wanted to write chāb, but in his absent mindedness left only ki.
5, 8. Apparently lāzin should be inserted after hujjat.
5, 10. In the text there is no indication of the lacuna.
5, 15. Again the same colloquialism, hār kast for har kasti kl.
6, 2; 6, 9; 6, 11 and 6, 16. Instead of qudrat it apparently should be ḍalām-i qudrat, as is often found in the text.
6, 16. For hīdah read hīdah.
7, 1. Read qabāla for qabbāla.
7, 10. After clāhīl add wa. The author usually omits wa in numerals.
7, 11. After haffād add wa.
7, 15. After chālār-ṣad add wa.
8, 2. After naqad add wa.
8, 9. Remove the dot over r in khād az nūr...
8, 10-11 Qondil-rā ẓāb shud. See above, p. 42.
8, 12. Perhaps it would be better to insert ki after ḍalām.
9, 1. Strike the comma after ṭaṭādān.
9, 3. Insert wa after qarār.
9, 5. In the orig. ḍhīl-Jalāl.
9, 13. Add one dot under awīyā.
9, 17. For ṭalātum read ṭalātum.
10, 16. So it is in the text. Perhaps hara-rā pāyād: (will vainly) search for nonsense. (The dot was probably omitted).
11, 7. Read: kūr-hā'ī.
11, 10. Read: ba-ja'ī.
12, 5. For diyāri and diyār, as in the original, one must obviously read daryā'ī and daryā-yī.
13, 8. Insert a comma after ḍabāh.
13, 10. The author, or the scribe, with his absent mindedness writes: (Adam) āmad wa nīdā āmad ba'd az nīdā rasīd...
13, 11. In the original in both cases Ilah for Allāh.
13, 13. In the original awnal is followed by Jabra'll, probably by mistake.
13, 16. After jisnānā insert namādam ki.
15, 3. On re-examination of the passage, it appears that the word, as has been suggested, fayd, should be better read qard (cutting).
15, 11. In the original bar-guzdā'ī, obviously for bar-guzdāgi.
16, 7. So it is written in the original, better tāydrū.
16, 15. For bi-ravād read ravād.
17, 11. In hamīn one of the dots under i has not come out.
18, 3. Strike (Arzhang).
18, 9. For fīfī read fīl.
18, 16. After wa lākin in the original follows mardān. If it is not superfluous, it should be either ba-mardān or mardān-rā.
19, 6. For 'udāw (as in the original) read 'udāw.
19, 7. For shūfī read mi-shūfī.
19, 15. For Arzhang read Arzhanī.
21, 14 and 17. Strike one of the soff, in each case.
22, 15. After hara-yī man read bi-guzār man....
23, 9. So it is in the original: nūr-i qadr. Should it be nūr-i qudrat?
25, 1. Dar rāḥī gushūdand. The author apparently first wrote der and then changed it for rāḥī, forgetting to cancel the first.

25, 4. For ḥāṣ read ḥāṣd.
25, 10. For alastu read alast. In the original: mast wa alast.
25, 11. As qarār-i qurbān-i qadīm. Here qānūn obviously should be read instead of qurbān, as in many other similar passages.

25, 15. For šrī Bānī Amin read ba-pā’in.
26, 2. For jayyār read tayyār.
26, 7. Miyān in the original obviously should be read bayān.
26, 9. For bāshad better read bāshand.
26, 13. Strike wa after khūd-rā.
26, 14. After bād it would be better to insert ki.
26, 17. Pīra zānī often appears in not very high class texts. Read pīr zānī.

27, 5. After shast read tawān.
27, 10. ‘Arabī bā nāqa. In the original bā is omitted.
27, 16. In the original: man’ namādīt.
29, 5. Restore two dots in the last word, mī-dāshīt.
30, 8. For gadr read gadrī.
30, 15. In the original after wa ān there is bārādar.
31, 12. After qirūm insert tawān.
31, 17. For sarastiqt, as in the original, a friend suggests an emendation: sur-shikastqt. I would prefer: (dar) in (kār) sar-shikastī (as kaṭ) rā dāda ast.

32, 4. Read mashām for masām.
32, 5. Read al-bāl for al-mahāl.
32, 15. Hamqal iṣhtān-rā. Here -rā is superfluous, another “Tehranism”.

33, 1. Insert tawā after qawm.
33, 2. In the original it is not clear whether it is ba-bād or ba-bār, or something else. Probably the latter is better, in the sense ba- (yak) bār, suddenly. Shiqqa is here a metaphor, for “mouth”.
33, 7. Probably to be read sharmandī wa (pur) khalat.

38, 1. For mustaṣṣād read musuṣād.
38, 4. For ṣard bād read ṣard namād.
38, 10. Sangūn-tar-and. Metrically better sangūn-tar.
39, 8. Piyaṭa nān dāda bī chāh. Probably che (i.e. Kurdish che, Pers. zi or az) would be better.
40, 3. Strike ba before angūshīt.
41, 4. Instead of chashūn read kūsh (yoke).
41, 11. Read bāgh taw būstān.
41, 16. Strike ki after wādāyat.
42, 4. The text is not interrupted, despite an obvious lacuna.
42, 4. Read the end of the line: bā ṭiḏ-ash na-yāya.
44, 4. In the first half of the bayt strike bā (of the original), in the second half for khūd and khūra read khūr in both cases.
45, 10. The text is not interrupted in appearance.
45, 16. Instead of sūmā (?) it is perhaps better to read shādān-a, shāb-i shādān a (st), “it is a night of joy”.
47, 5. In the original bi-girtī, which seems meaningless.
47, 8. The last word on p. 64 of the original and the first word on p. 65, are difficult to read: kāz and the next n-z-dūn or t-z-dūn.
47, 15. For toqī, as in the original, read toqīt.
48, 3. For jahān (end of the line) read jahān-rā.
49, 9. The last word has been apparently corrected as kafaylānā.
49, 3. Correct (second half of the line) dar har majlītī.
49, 7. For the original khatwūfī it would be better khatfi. Add rā after mardān.
50, 2. For karānā read kara nā.
52, 8. Resore two dots under ī (end of the line).
52, 10. For hizūm read hizūm.
53, 6. Probably toqīt, or some other similar expression should be put before ki.
53, 7. ba garyā’i dirāz, probably for ba garyā’i zārī.
CRITICISM OF THE TEXT

53. 10. Ān mawšr-ru. Here -ru is superfluous.—a "Tehranism".
53. 15. Strike ān before āb. At the end of the line before the
heading of the next chapter it is written: 'awād-i surkh
ast, i.e. "instead of (the heading) in red".
55. 13-14. Perhaps k-i-k is to be read gilak, dim. from gil, clay?
56. 2 & 7. In the text: sā-i anār.
57. 12. Instead of na-mi-tanāmman read mi-tanāmman.
58. 2. Text. At the end of the line there is also: 'awād-i
surkh, as on p. 53.
58. 10. For shādl read bi-shāld.
59. 5. For yāk read kām.
59. 16. Here again Sāf-i 'anār.
60. 5. In barād-ar-ru the particle ru is superfluous (Tehranism).
62. 1. Here ima perhaps may be read as ilm. Wāgin, in the
text wajīān.
62. 7. For pāyu'i it is also possible to read pāna'i.
63. 7. Ba-ān-ru qabāl ānand,—another Tehranism.
63. 15. Better khidmat-guzār-im.
63. 16-17. Shuma-rā dā... dukhtar dārid, another Tehranism.
65. 7. Mu'awwam (?)... is written as mu'ābāh, which is
meaningless.
65. 16. Restore a missing dot in the word khātān.
66. 7. Here also before the heading: in 'awād-i surkh ast.
68. 15. After chi insert ba.
70. 10. In the text clearly: hamū. Obviously to be read:
na-mi.
71. 10. Ba-ḥadrat-i Pir-i Māsī-ru, another "Tehranism".
71. 14. Apparently bi-ḥadrat would be better.
72. 4. Zamīn-ru. The text is obviously corrupt.
72. 7. Ham-nasfarān is conjectural,—the word is illegible.
74. 5. Examining carefully the passage I notice that I have
overlooked the fact that the word g-r-d-ā, which I read
as gūrdā, kidney, is here vokalsed as gūrdā. Thus here
gūrdā past obviously means a kind of round cakes

perhaps something like pancakes), which were served
after the sacrificial meat.
74. 8. For shūd read shūdā. The final word in the line was
apparently changed from kārā to dād.
74. 10. For Bonyāmīn read ba-pā'īn.
75. 14. The word which here appears as qalāmī apparently
should be read qalam. The tail of y belongs to the word
in the line below.
74. 15. The last word in the line is illegible.
76. 4. Apparently mi (or -l) is superfluous. Other Gurani
verses are badly corrupt on this page.
77. 8. Shaykh mashā'ikh. It is apparently one of the cases,
numerous in this text, in which the author, or scribe,
having written a wrong word, forgot to cancel it.
We must simply strike the first word.
78. 1. Murtakab. One would expect tarkb.
78. 4. For ṭayyār read ṭayyār.
79. 7. Manzūr is conjectural: illegible in the original.
79. 15. After ki insert man.
80. 6. 'Arda-dāshīt is obviously colloquial, and should be
'ard-dāshīt.
80. 9. There is no interruption in the text.
80. 11. Mā is conjectural. In the text it is written something
like māl or mān.
81. 2-3. Dil az man-rā ba-dāst āvarī,—a good specimen of a
Tehranism.
81. 6. Haqq az tā-rā (ba?) man bāshad,—another one.
82. 10. Text: ba-pā.
83. 17. Insert ki after yak dofā.
84. 2. Text: mi-gardīdand.
84. 6. Text: bi-di-hand.
84. 10. For gudhāshīt better read gūzāshīt.
84. 13. For rā read mi- (mi-Andākhtī).
85. 7. For namūd read jāmūd.
86. 10. After namūda insert tow dāwūda. Apparently this is
again a case of correction with wrong words left
un-cancelled.
CRITICISM OF THE TEXT

141. 13. The last word, mā' in may also be read sa'lā n.
147. 8. Mi-rāf. In the text mi-rāfī.
150. 5. Most probably should be: ba'd az (ān-ki) muddatt gudhāshtā bād.
150. 12. Apparently yakš or kasta should be inserted after chāhū.
152. 14. Tā'īfa-sān should be read tā'īfa-shān, the suffix shān referring to Khān Atish.
152. 15. It is not clear why it should be Sarkār-i Aqā, and not simply Sarkār-i Aqā, without -i.
154. 2. Text: tā'īfa sān. Should it be tā'īfa-shān?
154. 11, 12 and 13. For sāl, as in the text, read sāl in all cases.
154. 15. Zāriū. So it is clearly written in the text. It must be obviously ranjū or ranjūrū unless zāriū is used as the name of a kind of illness.
159. 3. Shaykh Rasūl A.Z. dāman-i pīr Bānīyān mīrī. Here az is obviously one of those mistakes which the author or scribe forgot to cancel.
161. 2. It is also possible to read māqtul for mājūn.
161. 5. For bi-gudhārīn read bi-gudhārīn.
162. 4. After birūn there is a blot.
162. 10. For har kās read har ki.
163. 6. For gudhāsht read gudhāsht.
168-169. In the original text the whole page, 220, has been badly placed in binding, so that the ends of many lines are not clearly legible, or parts of words disappeared.
169. 13. Rasīdān, i.e. rasīdān.
169. 15. Cancel haqq which has been obviously left by mistake.
170. 9. Instead of the suggested malākū read better ba-sukhit.
170. 10. After firā one may expect kī.
170. 16. Banaqsha, or ba-naqsha? Or Arab. bi-nafṣ-hi?
171. 1. There is idārāt (?) for idārā?
172. 4. Apparently wa should be inserted after jāzal.
173. 1. Dar sar wa pā'īn sar wa pā'安定. The sentence appears meaningless. It apparently should be: dar sar wa pā'安定 JAM sar-i pā'安定, i.e. "they remained standing at the higher and lower ends of the assembly", i.e. served it.

CRITICISM OF THE TEXT 195

173. 2. For hasham read khalīm.
173. 15. After yaqīn one would expect wa.
175. 6. Hisdah (sic) for hijdah.
180. 11. At the beginning ba has not come out in print. Similarly, in the second half, read rah after bi-yābū.
193. 9. At the beginning of the line read rā for ulla.
201. Second half of the second bayāt: correct the fatḥa into dāmā in the word Duldul.

AFTERTHOUGHTS:

Naqšā. It is discussed on p. 87. Most probably it should be translated: tongue. Gilawu means not only "neck", but also "gullet". Therefore az zir-i gilawu means: (the tongue cut) below the gullet (i.e. at its base).

Mulk-i Mawrūdīn. This name appears in the story of Pirālī. It sounds strange, but, unfortunately, I translated it with "district of Mawrūdīn". Mulk really means "kingdom", which is hardly suitable to a place in the tribal area. It should be therefore read mulk, i.e. estate, landed property, which belonged to Pirālī in Mawrūdīn, the name of a locality.

ERRATA.

By a mistake of printers the footnote (4) on p. 26 simply repeats the text of the footnote (3) on p. 24. It should be:

4. Such "inverted perspective", which makes the narrative about the creation and time before it, or the period of Adam and other early legendary heroes, full of details, is one of the basic features of religious mentality. Legend gives freedom to imagination which is stimulated by religious sentiment.
نورالدین فضل‌الله بن عبداللّه بن عبدالرحمن فضل‌الله، نهوض ١٦٨٠ هـ، دارالفنون، تهران، ١٣٣٤ هـ.

نورالدین فضل‌الله، نهوض ١٦٨٠ هـ، دارالفنون، تهران، ١٣٣٤ هـ.

نورالدین فضل‌الله بن عبداللّه بن عبدالرحمن فضل‌الله، نهوض ١٦٨٠ هـ، دارالفنون، تهران، ١٣٣٤ هـ.
SUPPLEMENT.

Turkish poetry.

On pp. 207-212 in the original ms., as a continuation to the Tadhkira-yi A'ld (which should have followed p. 159 in our edition), there is given a collection of Adharbayjani Turkish poetry. As has been mentioned on p. 23, for technical reasons it was found impossible to edit the collection lithographically. These pages are therefore reproduced here photographically. They also serve as a specimen of the handwriting in the copy.

It was extremely kind of Prof. V. F. Minorsky to translate this poetry for us, and to provide an accompanying explanatory note published here. As is mentioned in it, the 18 tristichs by a certain Hasan (of whom no information is available) are followed by a poem of the AH poet, Qushchi-oghli (probably the middle of the XVII-th c.)

The tristichs of Hasan are purely lyrical, and offer nothing of interest to the student of the AH beliefs. Only one tristich (no. 16) contains a reference of Khan Atish:

I said: his grief has turned (him?) to ashes.
See, in springtime Khan Atash
Looked upon the thorn, and it had become a rose.

With the consent of Prof. Minorsky we publish only the translation of the poem of Qushchi-oghli which, although substantially lyrical, nevertheless contains some allusions to the AH ideas.
VERSES IN TURKISH.

By V. Minorsky.

The verses in Azarbayjan-Turkish found in the manuscript are of two classes: the 18 bayad of a certain Hasan, and the long poem by the sectarian poet Qushchi-oghli ("Falconer's son") of whose poems a number are extant.

1. The bayad is a typical Azarbayjan-Turkish form of song, named after the Turkmen (Oghuz) tribe Bayat, now scattered throughout Persia and Transcaucasia. These short ditties are certainly intended to be sung, and are therefore particularly exposed to mutilation when committed to writing. As usual in Turkish popular poetry, their versification is syllabic and not, as in classical Persian poetry, quantitative. The poems are written in four lines, but the first line (except in nos. 15 and 17) acts only as a kind of title, naming the author and indicating the principal rhyme (cf. no. 10: *Hasan... o jinda*). As in the popular poems in the Gürani dialect, these introductory lines are probably meant to be recited while the introduction is being played. The lines consist of 7 syllables and the rhymes run in the order of a-a-b-a. The lines are divided by the caesura into groups of mostly 3 plus 4 syllables (occasionally 4 plus 3). The text is in a very poor state: several words could not be deciphered. The dialect to which some words belong is unknown, and here and there the copyist has added some words and syllables which disturb the rhythm.

The contents of the poems are characterized by the usual mixture of sanctity, erotic lyrics and special terminology. The 18 pieces contain many obscure allusions to matters well understood only by a special circle. They seem to be disconnected, but at times the sequence suggests a variant, or further play on words, of the preceding piece.

2. The *Kultan* of Qushchi-oghli is a more conventional poem consisting of 16 stanzas of three lines (the first two stanzas being of two lines) which have the same rhyme, a-a-a, b-b-b. Each stanza is followed by the same refrain which contains a pious invocation.
Neither does the poem make distinction between long and short syllables. It is purely syllabic and, in the better preserved verses, clearly consists of ten syllables divided in the middle by a caesura (i.e. forms a group of five syllables plus another group of five syllables): sahla balada || san juma'd yari.

The following translation can only be tentative in view of the obscurity of the vocabulary and the imagery.

**THE KALAM OF QUSHCHI-OGHLI.**

*O Sultan, a Lord of the mystery of the assembly, Preserve all the friends (yâr) from misfortunes!*

1. To the smallest creature of God Be a guide, o Shah, in the trouble of the other world.
2. Do not mix to the class of ill-wishers those friends (Who) in pre-eternity surrendered their heads to that king of kings.
3. O ancient king of kings, creator of the creatures, There is no friend ignorant of you in the other world. In imitation of thy name (i.e. Haydar) we are (like) one hundred lions, opposed as Truth to Negation.
4. Be not unfamiliar with the mystery of Praise, O friend of the religion, be not ignorant of the faith and belief. Be an expert continuously (?) of the entanglements of the world.
5. You are hopeful of all the friends, (But) if, o Shah, you wish to (condemn someone) to letters, Pardon him, as his (?) friend, for one who accomplishes the rites.
6. *The friends of Baghdad* will become manifest (before) the Creator. Who will certainly hold a review of “those with rent breasts”. Recompense will come from his nine heavens.

7. You are his last hope in difficulties. Save him from Hell, if you are a helper (taw) to a friend, And remove it (Hell) altogether (far) you are (the possessor of) a thousand arts.

8. Be friends, be on duty! Constantly (keep) your hands and arms (in your?) pockets. Non-existence is a flower, catch it rapidly.

9. Let him who is a friend constantly keep dhikr. Without dhikr one is a black-faced beast. With dhikr, surrender your head, and take, o friend, my portion.

10. (A friend) keeps always his tongue from slander. Having surrendered your soul, do not transgress the pact of igrâr. Know for certain that he who has surrendered (his soul) has received an elephant from the Shah.

11. For sure (ta'wâlû) recognize Khâvandigâr for ‘Ali. Think that the whole world is worth only half-a-grain. Do not lose the Shah, take your ration from him.

12. Know that Shâh-Khoshin is certainly ‘Ali-the-Truth. Khoshin is the Sultan of the mystery of assemblies, wholly (kûllî)! Believe that your breast is mad (with rapture) inside the Truth.

13. That King of the World did not appeal to the “thorns”. When he came out of the Pearl the friends said hâ. Do not stray from the path (foot-prints), you who keep rites.

14. The Sultan is the universal pîr, surely he does not wither away. He is never far away from the garment (i.e. incarnation) in a man. Those who pretend (?) to deny do not recognize that All.
15. Certainly, after the Sultan the Truth will not die.
Be conscious of him who does not know himself, discriminate between (what is) his and that of another.
Wander day and night, coming from one "garment" to the other.

16. O friends, do not make one moment (lost?).
Do not let your ears be ignorant of the voice of the Truth.
Know that Qushchi is the smallest of all "friends".

The First and the Last: ḫaḏ

The End.
ahli-Jahannam, T. 148
ahli-jam, T. 82, 139, 146, 147, 155, 158, 167
ahli-kufar, converted, 147
ahli-Kopossi, T. 104, 118
ahli-gabala, 32
ahli-qenaat, T. 155, T. 161
ahli-quber, niorat-i, T. 197
ahli-Rum, T. 132
ahli-sodat, T. 163
ahli-Shahri, T. 103, 112, 114, 116, 118, 120, 123
ahli-silah, T. 97, 111
ahli-tahqiq wa yak-rang-i
iikhlus, 106, T. 15
ahli-tarifa, T. 173
ahli-tariq, T. 163
ahli-tasannun, T. 118
ahli-yaran, T. 157
Ahmad, killed, T. 143
Ahmad, pir, T. 198
Ahmad of Hawraman, excommunicated, T. 151, 152
Ahmad, Kaka, T. 111, 112, T. 38, 39
Ahmad-I Burqa-band, T. 188
Ahmad-I Burunda, Niyoz-i, T. 190
Ahmad Rufai, 157
Ahmad, Sayyid (of T tan), T. 188, 202
Ahmad, Shah Kaka, T. 111, T. 38, 39
Ahmad Shah, Sayyid (of 40), T. 155
Ahmad, shaykh, T. 154, 155
Ahmad Yasawii, 131
ahs, gazel, feeds 40 infants, T. 186
Ahura Mazda, 34, 36
air created from water, T. 104
Ajeri, 145
ajiz, T. 20
Ajuri, village, 145-147, T. 130, 152
akhirat, T. 144

al, as used by the Kurds, 56
al-‘abe, 167, 188, T. 16, 23, 166
al-‘abs, Panji Ten-k dar jam
and, T. 156
Aka Qepi, T. 134
‘Adila, son of Piri, T. 120, T. 58
‘alam-I bela, T. 11, 14
‘alam-I bafin, T. 13, T. 7, 73
‘alam-I chharr, T. 136, T. 107
‘alam-I ghayb, T. 109, T. 21, 25, 51, 93, 99, 119
‘alam, hijdah hazor, maya’t, T. 16, 73, 110
‘alam, hijdah hazor, qabala’t, T. 51
‘alam, hijdah hazor, sharh-I
*, T. 75
‘alam-I man’a, 163, T. 192
‘alam-I qal, T. 128
‘alam-I sabr, T. 166
‘alam-I Sayyid Muhammad, T.
199
Alamut, 70
Alatam, Imams of, 18, 69
‘Ale’s-din, AH poet, 29
Akibgenes, 51
Aleppo, 64, 69
Alevi 1
Adab of ‘ed, 139
Adab wa arkun dar Aaqiqat, 155,
T. 161
Adab-I Aaqiqat, not to be divined,
180, T. 169
Adabya, undeceivable, Mibrak,
36
a’dad-I fishtagun, T. 14
Adam, 45, 46, 113, 163, 168, 169,
176, T. 5, 13, 15, 16, 17, 27,
42, 44, 57
Adam, awakens, 107
Adam, bor-I giiran ba gardan, T.
28
Adam, created, 107
Adam, Deity becomes incarnated
in, 45
Adam, figure of, 107
Adam, first and last, 45
Adam wa Ib, mjsndala, 45
Adam, Jesus was like—, 53
Adam, kolbad-I, T. 16, 17
Adam-I khaki, T. 177, 179
Adam, khilqat-i, T. 192
Adam-I lari, T. 162
Adam, libus-I, T. 193
Adam, man-am (Attish), T. 206
Adam, prostration of angels, 44
Adam receives prophecy, 107
Adam receives a visitor, 108
Adam, sajda-I, T. 17
Adam, series of Adams, 45
Adam, sneezing of, 169
adam-be, T. 129
Adam, T. 5
adam-zad, T. 42
Adharbaysjan, 170
Adharbaysjan, Pers. population
bed, 16
Adharbaysjan, qabala’i mulkiiyat-I,
T. 154
Adhar dialect of Persian, 16
‘adi wa dod, T. 207
Adopted Son of God, Christ, 44
Adoptionist tendencies in early
Eastern, Christianity and
Islam, 44, 52
adultery, 98
adyen, naa, of ‘am, I. 188
Afariigur wa Khalig, T. 80
Afghan, mulk-I, T. 193
Afghanistan, 18, 169
o’tab, T. 29, 32, 33, 74, 133
o’tab ro az ghurub-gardani, T.
73, 93
o’tab ro gudhasht ir-I zama, T.
93, 102-103
o’tab, das-I qurayt ba su-y-I, T.
51, 74, 119, 129
o’tab, sharr-I nur-I, T. 29
o’tab ba mahtab, T. 103
o’tab ba sajda-I Shah amad, T. 25
o’tab, shams-I-I-I, T. 133
o’tab ro 3 da’a ba zamin awurd,
T. 27, 35
agape connected with Eucharist,
82
agape connected with killing of
animals, 84
agape, Paulician, and jam, 54, 77
Agha Khan, H. H., 22
Agha Khan, Hasan-Ali Shah,
107
AH, abbreviation for Ahl-I Haqq,
ashad-I sharri, T. 183
Ahab, in Qadagh, T. 170, T. 193
‘ahd (period of), T. 96
‘ahd-I Adam, T. 17
‘ahd-I Muhammad Mustafa, T. 18
‘ahd, oath of allegiance, in
Islamism, 4, 92
‘ahd-I bayat, T. 178
ahli-I Aaqiqat, 1, 109, T. 26, 112,
148, 152, 153, 161, 167-169,
171
ahli-I Aaqiqat, Nizori Ismaiiis, 71
ahli haqq, followers of ‘Ali, 109
ahli haqq, meaning expl. by S,
Sahak, 158
ahli-I Hawraman, T. 151, 154
book by Khan 'Atish (?), 175
to "born in water", Christ, 44
bouling, in initiation ceremony, 157
bracing at initiation ceremony, 66-67
bread, distrib, at jam by Creator, 44, 105, T 10
breaking of the nut, jawz, 55, 168, 179
brother-in-God, Haqq-qarandash, 41
Bu 'Ali Qalandar, T 202
Ba'i-Walaf, Shah, Sayyid Shahzada, son of S. Sahak, 126, 163, 169, T 180, 193, 197
bu-yi 'atar-i Shah, T 58
bu-yi Banyamin, T 85
bu-yi mo, T 57
bu-yi Padshah-i 'alam, T 125
bu-yi wisal, T 46, 50
Buddhist influences, supposed, in Sufism, 67
buildings, religious, absent among Paulicians and AH, 54
Bulgaria, 47
Buraq, T 21
burial ceremony, shariat rules applied, 96, 153
burial of bones and unedible parts of sacrifice, 86, 84, 89
Burma, 67
Burujird, 112
buruz dar surat-i durt-i 'Abd, T 16
bustan, garden, planted by Banyamin, T 66
Buwayr-Ahmad, tribe in Fars, 30
Buyid or Daylamite state, 16
Buzurg, T 127
buzurgan-i Hamadan, T 45
Cairo, Bektashe, of, 64
Cayter, dain'ti, 60
Caspian provinces, dialects spoken in, 15, 16
cat, Mustafa-yi Dewadon takes form of, 56, 128, T 83
cat, black, plague turns into, 167
Cathars, 51
Caucasia, 1, 33
Cauit and Cautsopat, dadophori, 39
caves, maghza, 41, 121, 122, 128, 135
cellulacy and the kahk, 20
Central Asia, 16; osmuries in, 65
"Centre" (Incarnation), 156
certificate of initiation into AH sect, 167
chashir-i galandari, T 128, 186
chahar bayt-i Qirmizi, T 121
chahar jasad, yaran-i, 140, 112
chahar kas nishasta, yaki bar sar-i pa, T 119
chahar malak, see "angels", 11, T 66, 97
chahar malak, muqarrab, T 9, 10
chahar malak-i Murtads 'Ali, T 188
chahar malak-i Shuh Khahin, T 188
chahar pir-i shafi', T 14
chahar tan iqfar shawand (confraternity), T 81
chakidan-i naf, T 15
chand-rat, 78
changing the dan, 110
Charmina-pash, Aywat-Shah-i Shihabu'd-din, T 159, 201
charter, cf. qabala, colour of the sun, 110, 115, 123, 142
INDEX

chart of unutterable mystery, 102, 115, 132
chashm-nargisain wa ris-h-i du-
faq, description of Incarna-
tions in prophecies, T 17, 93, 119
chasama'i Sultan, 133, T 95
chasma'i zar-d-gil, never drying, T 159
chawgan, polo, played on surface of
river, 117, T 53
Chowshah-i Diwan, Baha, niyaz-i, T 190
cheating by pirs, 159, T 167
Cherkes, Dowud goes to, 133, T 94
Cherkes, wilsat-i, T 94
Cherkesi, T 96
Chichak, Chichak, T 69, 71, 72
Chichak-i mardw wa na-pok, 122, T 71
Chichak, quash-i, 155, T 161
Chilirugh, T 200
Chihil-tan, see Chiltan.
chilla, dar—nishastan, 66
chilla-i buzurg, 139
chilla-khana, 66
Chiltan, Chiltanun, 109, 164, 183,
T 25, 178, 181, 184, 185,
186, 188, 202
Chiltan, dam-i, T 188
Chiltan-i khwist, 23, 165, T 185, 186
Chiltan-i Nsr, 22, 164, 165,
T 183, 185
Chiltan, piyal-i, T 178
Chinese children, progenitors of
the Delf tribe, 112
Chirugh-Ali (of Forty), T 185
Chirikov, E.L., 139
Christ in Adoptionist theories,
born ordinary man, 52
Christ, Aghus Del, 182
Christ, fish as symbol of, expl. 44
Christ, as universal scapegoat, 162
Christians, dhikra, admitted to
jam?, 115
Christian love, communal meal
of, Paulician agape, 54
Christians, as carriers of
Biblical lore, 50
Christianity, early, Adoptionist
tendency of, 44
Christianity, Eastern, indigenous
form of, 49, 50
Christening, vicariously, of
ancestors by sacrifices (matala),
82-84
Church of Persia, ancient, 183
Clément, liturgy of, 182, 183
clipping of moustache, prohibited
in a qarar by 'Ali, 97, 161
cock replacing pigeon in AH
practice, 55
coin in initiation ceremony,
91, 157
colt, as mount of Incarnation,
33, 111
communication and mysteries in
Mithraism, 77
"completer", Mutimm, term
expl., 71
completion, Sarranjum, 109
concealment of religion, insisted
by AH, 1, 2
conception, miraculous of Jesus
and Virgin Mary, 52
confession of sin at jam, 94, 95,
149, 153
confederation, iqror, 40
congregation and church in
Christianity, 75
constituency of Aujat with
Imam in Islamism, 73
contacts between AH and
Islamism, 21
contempt of the jam, 76
conversion to AH sect, hasty, 92
Conybeare, F.C., "The Key of
Truth", 1898, 46, 50
Coran, 25, 109, 149, 137
Coran, traces of beliefs in
metempsychosis, 73
Cosman the Bulgar priest, 47
cosmic significance of events at
jam, 76
cosmogony, AH, symbolism of, 51
covenant, see Shart.
covenant with 'Ali concern.
moustache, 97, 161
covenant of allegiance, 163
covenant of pir-u muridi, see
Pir-u muridi.
covenant of sincere following of
Aqīqat rules, 156
covenant, solemn, over the nut,
83, 102, 146, T 8, 131
covenant of Mithra and
sun-god, 39
creation of 18,000 worlds, 102;
purpose of, 100, 168
creation, story of (Gulshir), 167
Creator, creates a nut, 83
Creator, declaration over the
nut, 83
Creator, hair of, 167
Creator, manifested in human
form, 42, 45, 73
Creator, murid of His creation, 12
Creator, perspiration of, 83,
167, 168
Creator, seal ring of, 168;
seals in qabala, 123
Creator, sleeves of, 168
Creator, sweat of, 168
Creator, in 1001 persons, 124
Cumont, F., "The Mysteries of
Mithra", 73
curd, see also mast, 110, 143, 152
curd (mast), bowl of, (ritually)
distributed, 116, T 53
curd, bowl of, with the qabala,
placed on Tash-i Hurin, 117, T 53
curd, way of eating it, 116
De Ja'ala, 111, T 36
Dada (Dede) Rawshan-Ali,
163, T 184
Dadur, dher-i, T 200
Dadarra, 174, T 203
dadophori, Mithraic, position of
feet, 39, 44
dana-daish, see dana-daish, 37
dastar-i baftun, 33, 88, 150, 151,
159, T 150, 154, 167
dastar-i Misi, tibab-i, T 189
dastar-dar-i baftun, Kaka Rahmon,
140, T 113
dastar-dar, Pir-i Misi, T 74
dastar-dar-i khayir wa sharr-
nawis, Israfil, 106, T 14
dakhil-i khidmat, stealing
(by pir), 159, T 168
delshu hills, 171, T 178, 199
delshu, Sawur-i, T 178
dali (in jawz shikanastan), T 187
dali — Dowud, T 79
dali wa pir wa dastar-dar, Misi,
T 14
dami-i Chiltanun, T 188
dami-i Haqq wa jam-i Haqq,
T 89, 90
dami-i restagan, jam, T 90
dam-i subhat, T 57
dam wa subhat-i yari, T 56
dam-i yari, masghuli-i, T 66
doman-i pir girfan, in initiation
ceremony, 165-166
Damascul, Pir-i Misi goes there,
133, T 94
Damoish Upaman, 36, 37
dana'i durr ba shaki-i qandil az
nur-i pok, T 8
dancing, David sanctifies it, 57
dancing at jam, not permitted, 95
dar-i gumbad-i khadra, T 24
dar-i wazir, T 88
Daru-Shikh to, Mbid, substance of
Ibrahim Al 'lam, 171, T 195
Darius, 82
INDEX

INDEX

Darsa-shish, 128, 129, T 83, 84
Dar’a-m, dist., 9
darwish, on foot, with tabarzin,
accompanying ‘Ali, 107, T 17
darwishes partly follow rules of
sharī’a 27
dary-yi Hurmuz, T 49
dary-yi ‘Umman, Dhu’l-qlur
thrown in, T 28
daryuza, begging, 119, T 54
Dasht-i Azahana, 105, 108,
T 19
Dashilja, darra’, 174, T 203
Dashluja, 174
dast’amalon, T 38, 39
dast-ru bala-yi gash girifand,
T 163
dast-i rast-i qurban bar dast
T 3
dast-i rast-i qurban bar pusht-i
gashl-rast nihed, T 73, 165
dast-r-i Payghambar, T 184, 185
dagzir, Shah Ibrahim, 171, T 199
Dastkid (?), T 71
dast-r-i sabiq wa qadiin, 12, 72,
T 51, 93, 119
daugher of a Sayyid cannot
officiate as wajip, 56, 160, T 165
David, 57
da’wad-kora, contest with, 12,
19, 111
da’wat, Fatimid, headquarters of,
hierarchy, 72
da’wati-padashin, T 198
Dawdan, place, 133, 156, T 94, 163
Dawlat-shikast-ai Haqq
(Imam Husayn?), 164, T 182
dawr, adwar, T 200
daw-o-Injil, T 17
daw-r-i Mirza (Mahdi), T 120
daw-r-i Muhammad Mustafa, 18
Dawr, Pir-i, passim.
Dawood, archetype of pir-i
dalil, 79
Dawood, created from perspiration
of the Deity, 167, 170; from
the sleeve of God, 163
Dawood, David, 57
Dawood, dast-o, 151, T 152
Dawood, dives into Fire, 163,
T 180
Dawood, endowed with almost
Divine power, 15
Dawood, ghost sad dar Narr
T 189
Dawood, Jane Haqqani, T 181
Dawood, maki, established, 151,
T 152, 188, 189
Dawood, punishes Dasha, 152,
Hawramanis, 150, 151
Dawood, rahbar wa mushkil-
guosa, 124, 126-128, T 101
Dawood, rido-y-i, T 21
Dawood, travels to the country of
Cherkesses, 133, T 91
Dawood-i Divan, 57
Day of Resurrection, 40
Dayalima, pl. of Dayalim, expl. 17
Dayira, khatun, T 63
Daylam, expl. 17; used in the
sense of “Persian”, 16
Daylamite or Buyid state, 16
dayr-i wisal, 46
declaration over the nut, 83, 102,
146, T 6, 131
Dede (Dada) Rawshan-‘Ali, 165,
T 184
Dede, Bektashi, of Cairo, 64
Deity, manifested in human
form, 71
Deity, is present in the jam, 76
Delf tribe, Delfan, 112, 143, 144,
148, 161, 162, T 110, 123,
126, 136, 172, 173, 175
Delf territory, 144
Delfs versus Kupasi’sis, 138
Delhi, 171, T 195
Demisouche, Evil God of gnostics,
46, 47, 182
deus-din, Sorojo, 37
d-poust, see amanat
Devayansam Mard̲a’in, 53, 70, 82
Devil (created the world), 47
dhikh-i ‘aqib, T 6
dharr-i nār-ia nār-ia, 105, T 29, 32
dharr-i nār-i Khud, shaher,
T 13, 14
dharr-i-i-pak, T 128
dhät-i ’Ali Qulander, Shah
Isma’il Safawi, T 193
dhät (substance) of “angels”, 77
dhät-i Chiltan, T 200
dhät-i Haqqani, T 163, T 179
dhät-i Khuliq, T 124
dhät-i Khan Atish, T 172
dhät-i mihmas, 55, 73
dhät-i mutlaq, T 47
dhät-i Narr-i anwar, T 200
Chet-i pak ashkor namudan
(manifest), T 51, 94, 119, 129,
156
dhät-i-pak-i ‘Ali, T 120, 122, 123;
of Mhd Bek, T 156
dhät-i pak-i Qirmarz, T 118
dhät-i pak-i Razber, 43, T 10
dhät-i per-zur, Pirali, 119, T 55
dhät-i gure, 55, 73, T 200
dhät-i wahdaniyat, siri-i ma-ga,
T 26
dhät-i yakts, T 46
dhihkr, AH, 95, 96, 140, 161, 201,
T 115, 116
dhihkr-i ‘aqibq, T 170; wa
suhbat-i yari, T 174
dhihkr-i yari, T 115, 128
dhihkr ders-i ‘aqibq, condemned,
T 169
dhihkr, Sufi, 95
dhammi, Christian, 115, 116,
T 32
Dhu’l-qlur, sword, 28, 36, 90, 110,
118, 137, 157, T 145, 201-202
Dhu’l-qlur-i du-sar—Sharti
Banyum, T 145
Dhulfiqar, Zulfiqar, Qoramir’s wife,
T 142, 144, T 121, 124
dial (Serwan) riv., 117
dialects, Central Persian, 18
Didsche (“Instruction of 12
Apostles”), 162
didas-deer, term expl. 115
Dib-i ‘Ali, T 29
Dib-i Atish Bek, 145, 173, 176,
T 206 (cf. quayz)
dik-jash, 65, 66, 161
Dimisheq, cf. Damascus, T 94, 96
Dimis (name of the Zaza),
expl., 10
din-i haqqqat, T 170
din-i pak-i madhab-i Jafar, T 39
dinar, sad dinor, sammar, 80, 81
Dinawar, 28
disappointment of newly
initiated, 161
distinctive sign of AH,
non-clipping of moustache, 161
distribution of food in jam must
be equal, 102, 153, 159
distribution of nut, at initiation,
157
Divine Substance, Incarnation
dress of, 73
Divinity of the Imam, 71
dive into Fire, of Dawood, 163,
T 120
divulging this book, condemned,
101, T 5
divulging the mystery and
customs of haqqqat, warning
against, 160, 172, T 169, 199
diw, dus, 120, T 59
diwun, judgment, T 142; ruzi-,
T 146
diwan far odp, 154, 155
Diwan of Hijmats of A. Yaawari,
120
diwan-i Sakhik, T 156
Dizawar, 116, 117
Dizawar, mi’, sang, rock of, 116,
INDEX

122, 131, 142, 155, T 73, 97, 93, 101
"Dogmatic Panoply", by E. Zigabenus, 47
doves in Persia, 55
dress, clean, to be donned for jam, 78
dress, dan, human of Incarnations, 71
Druzes, ni’ul-haqq, 1
Druzes, doctrine of, close to AH, 2
Druzes, khala, dhikr, no meals, 77
Druzes, Paulician elements in doctrine, 49, 77
Druzes, system of beliefs, 8-9 du-shahi az Dawd, T 188
du’u dudan-i dukhtar-i Sayyid, T 168
du’u-yi jawz, T 165
du’u-yi khatm-i jam, 74, 174, T 116
du’u-yi qabdi, T 74
du’u-yi qurban, T 165
du’u-yi raza, T 187
du’u-yi Sharti Banyamin, 6, 139
du’u-yi shukrans, T 115, 167
du’u-yi sufra, T 189
duda, hearth, 66, 163, T 178-181, 183
dudaat faqr, T 180; ithbut-i, 164
duda-mard, T 177-181
dudamun, T 180, 181
Daden or Daren? (cf. Dawdon), T 94, 96, 192
dukhtar-i Jaffi (dan-i zani ki mast mi-awurd), T 123
dukhtar-i Sayyid, du’u-dudan-i, T 168
Dulbul-sawar, T 201
dam, "dress", meaning of, 8
dam, az in den ba dan-i digar mi-rawad, T 155
dun-l ‘Ali Qalandar (Qirmizi),
dun-l haywanl-i kathif, for sinners, T 165
dun-l Mustafa, Qubid, 108
muri-pani ki kasam-i mast mi-awurd, T 123
dun-l Qirmizi, T 112, 124
dun-l quch-i zard, Pireh takes, T 69
dun-l shahbaz, T 62, 67
dun-l zuhar, T 131
durr, cf. pearl, in creation, 102, 103, T 6-8
Dusahaan, Dusahaan, T 156, 157
dushman-i khudan, T 89
dust (in creation of Adam), 106, 108, 169
dust, from jam, thrown by Dawd to disperse enemy, 127
duzakh, T 11
dwelling of spirit of God in Paulician "elect", 55; Shrite version of, 79
Ear, right, of sacr. animal, foreleg put behind it, 103, 123, 135, T 103
earth created from foam, 104, 167
Earily Forty, cf. Chilitan-i Khaki, 165-167
eating too much at jam condemned, 159, 161
Ebianion, 53
Ebyonites, 49
Edessa (Urfa), 48
Edmonds, C.J., 10
Egypt; 5; church of, 183
"ekpo", 65
Elburz mountains, 16
"elect" among Paulicians.
Thonrakis, "Christ", different from ordinary mortals, 55
"elect", Paulician, and AH jag Sayyid, T 79
"elect", Paulician, scarcity of, 56
Electi, Manichaeus, 55
embers, live, taken by hand, 96
Ethiopia, church of, 183
Eucharist, 54, 109, 183
Eucharist, coming hungry to, condemned by St. Paul, 87
Eucharist, Paulician, preceded by agepe, connected with killing of an animal, 54, 82, 94
Eucharist, Paulician, agepe of, meal of Christian love, 54
Eucharist, Paulician, single loaf distributed, 54
Eucharist, Paulician, partaken at private homes, 54
Eucharist, qurban, as called by Arab Christians, 54
Euphrates, 48
Europe, 33, 34
eva-padham, 65
Eye, cf. Hawwa, created, 44, (107), 113
Evil God, Demiourgus, 46, 182
evil spirits, 86
excommunication as punishment for violation of taboos, 76
excommunication for loss of moustache, 180
"extensions" of Mithra, personified, 36, 39
Fadluhat, T 5
Fadl, shykh, or Shah, sultan-i tariqat (Fadlu-l-ih Hurufi of Astrubod), 64, T 198
Falaki, enemy of AH, buried, 113
falcon, Chichkak's, 155, T 161
falcon, divine, 53
falcon, Kh. Atish assumes form of, 148, T 137
falcon, white, Shah Khushin assumes form of, 117
falcon, royal, S. Sahak in the form of, 120, 121, T 58, 66
fall of Adam, myth absent in AH doctrine, 44
Faq'at, Faqih, Boha Faqih, Kur-e Faqi, etc., 44, 112, T 41-44
fasc, T 151
fasr-i khandan, T 178
Farajul-ihar Beki Mir, 176, 205
Farsemar Khen, s. of Atish, 148, T 137
"Farhang-i Jughafsuy-yi Iren", referred to, 116, 117, 122, 125, 144, 145, 152, 170, 173-176
"al-Faq' baya'l-firaq", 18, 34
Fara, 17, 56
Fara (Salman), 164, T 180
fard zadan, T 25
fasting, karam, punished with excommunication, 94, 157-153
fasting, prayers connected, darwesh, 161
fasting, 3 days, ordered to Qabalis, 137, T 109
"father", spiritual, expl., 156
father-less birth theory, 72
Fathers, holy, of Church, 51
Fatima bint Aasad, 53, 108, T 18
Fatima, daughter of the Prophet, T 16, 169
Fatima'i Larra Barasi-shahi, T 45, 47, 48
Fatimid empire, Sind part of, 17
Fatimid philosophy, 72
Fatimid theory of zahir and barin, 70
Fatimids, 69
fayad, remuneration of usj, Sayyid, 79, T 153
Fayil, Lura, 110, T 27
Festival, AH, see 'id
Festival, celebration of, 162
Festival, khidmat of, 86
Festival of Truth, 141, T 116
fikr-i Aaqiqat, 170
fingers used by Kurds to eat curd, 115
AH-28
INDEX

Armenia, 48

Gregory Magistros, 34, 70

group: unions, confraternities,

Golhar-i Pir, bala-dai, T 49

Gujrat, 20

Gul-fastan, yaran-i, T 198,

see Qahalta

gulbeng or qapi posture of
darwishes, 64, 83, 102

gulbeng, Bektashi, 64

Gulshir (of Forty), T 185, 202

Gulshir-i Sabzawari, risala of,
27, 41, 45, 167, T 187

Gunabad's, 62

gunah ba gardan girftan, 95,

128, T 81-82

gunsh-kar hazira, 95, 127,

T 81, 82

Gunbad-i Khadra (in Mir'raj),
109, T 24, 183, 184

gur, galla'i, wild ass, T 39, 40

Guran tribe, orig. Kurdish,
16, 18, 23, 29

gurba, cf. cat. Mustafa-yi
Dwivedi turns in, T 83, 81

gurba's maroon, the same, 128,

T 83

Guristan (?), 169

gush, dast bolo-yi, nihad, gaw
wa quch, T 102

gwanda, mard-i qawl, expl.,
96, 124

Habib, Sayyid, Shaykh, Shah,
Mir, Shahzada, Habib-i jasun,
a. of Sakhat, 126, 163, 169,
T 180, 188, 193, 197

habitat of AH, 1, 7

hadd-i pak-i Banyamin, 128,

T 81, 82

hadd-i taklif, 159, 160, T 167, 168

Hadi Burranda (of Forty), T 185

Hafs, poet, quoted, 100, T 2

Haft-tan, T 53, 79, 178, 180, 188.

haft tan dar mir-i Sej-i Nor,

T 188

Haft Tawana, 9, 126, 154, 164

haftad-i de pir, T 74, 158, 159.

169

haftad-i de tan, T 54, 58, 57,
116-118, 173-175

Haqi Baba Husayn, a. of S.
Sakhat, 125, 164, T 180

Haqi Bektash Wali, cf. under
Bektash, T 125

hajj, T 60

haqim-i 'ar-i Qirmizi, T 121

Haal wa harem, distinguished,
155

Hamadan, 9, 113, 114, T 44, 49

al-lamdu li-t-lab, amenat, 45

Hamdaniya of Mosis, 69

Hamza Bara-shahi, 118, 124,

T 76

hand, stretched out to take div.
charter, 115

handing over one's head, cf. sar
supurdan, dadan, 4, 157, 168

handkerchief in initiation

ceremony, 91

haqiqat, admittance of
Christians, 116

haqiqat, arkan-i, T 150

haqiqat, dakhil ba, T 118

haqiqat, id-i, T 116

haqiqat, jam-i, T 147

haqiqat, khana'i, T 133

haqiqat, manzil-i, T 26

haqiqat, name in, T 170

haqiqat, qaru'i, 155, T 74, 161.

163, 165, 169

haqiqat, qaww wa qaru'i, T 74

haqiqat, sirr-i, T 124

Haqq dust, 109, T 24, 25

haqq-i irshad, 27, 28

haqq-i Pir (Banyamin), 66

Haqq-quranash, 41

Haqqani, T 181, 183, 199

INDEX

fire created for cooking qurban,
102

fire-test for Christians entering
haqiqat, 116, T 52

firshat-agun, angels, created, T 14

fish, revived by S. Sahak, 88,

130, 157

fish, symbol of Christ, 44

flight of rural population of
Persia under Mongols, 15

flowers consulted as to
Banyamin's priority, 125, T 76

fluidity of AH tradition and
forms of worship, 73

foam, kaf, earth created of, 104,

T 8

forehead, brandishing on, 67

foreleg, cf. dast, of sacr. animals,
lifted to touch right ear,
102, 123, 135, T 103

forgiveness to sins confessed to
jam, T 96

"Forty bodies", see Chiltan.
"Forty of Light", see Chiltani-
Nur.

Friday as day of sacrifice, 159

"friends of Baghdad", 200

funds of jam, see mol-i jam,

79-81

Furqenu'l-akhbar, AH reformist
work, 28

Ifta'i Banyamin, T 54

futuwat, 69

Gahwara, T 25

Gahm-kul, 151; Gahm-das, T 290

ganj, story of treasures, T 46, 47

Gardan-gah Sheshan, 121, T 30

Gardan-gah-i Wamaiz, 41, T 112

garm-i dhikr-i yuri, T 128

gaaght (beggar's round), T 54

gow-i buryan, fried beef,
distributed at under Soj-i Nur
(first jam), T 189

Gregory the Illuminator of
Haqqani, Peshawar, 163, T 181
Haqqani, sir-i, mystery of, hidden in Delawar, 171, T 199
Haram, various aspects of, 52, 98, 118, 148, 150, T 148
Harami, attacking raiders, T 99, 100
Harir, jama't, T 33
Hasan b. Ali, 110, T 16, 27, 169
Hasan of Rum, T 132
Hasan, AH poet, 197, 199
Hasan-Ali Shah, the Agha Khan, 107
Hasan-Bek and his daughter, T 121, T 63-65
Hasan-i gawd-her (or gaw-yur), T 112, 140, 41
Hasan Khan, T 145
Hasanuya b. Husayn al-Buzaki, 6
Hawraman (Awraman), 80, 81, 150, 151, T 149, 150, 151, 154
Hawramanis apostatize, 150
Hawroo, cf. Even, 113, T 17, 36, 44
Hayyub, farzand, T 120
Haydar, Shah, parent of Shakhzad, Safi, T 92
Haydar, Shah Sayyid, Jalolu-din, T 194
Haydari, na'ti, T 100
Haydaries (Khaksar darwishes), 1, 62
Haydaries, "monastic" wing of AH? 62
Hazar-Ali (of Forty), T 185
Hazara, Persian spoken by, 16
hecatombs of ancient Persians, 82
Hegemonius, "Acta Archelaus", 52
Heli, 48, 105, 160, 163, 201
Hell, Dawud dived into, 163
Herawi, village on Sirwan, 125
Hersfeld, E., "Zoroaster and his World", 1947, 35
Hidhshah-i mab-i chillas, date of, T 11, T 111
Hind, cf. India, T 193, 195, 196
Hindistan, pir-i, T 180
Hu, expl., 107, hu kashidan, 107, T 6, 23, 25, etc.
Hubb-Ali, T 201
Hudaidatiyya, oath at, 5
Husayn b. 'Ali, T 43, 72
Hujjat, Chief Pir, in Islamism, 72
Hujjat, close relative of the Imam, his ties with, 21, 72
Hulul Khon, enemy, 142, T 121
Hulwan, pul-i, or pard-i, T 60, 61
human form, Deity's manifestations in, 71
human sacrifices, voluntary, 87-88, 145
hundred dinars for Dawud, 151
Hyr wa ghilmun, 140, T 14, 115
Huref, T 164, T 182
Hurraj, Hurraj, rock of, most, sang, khar, mil, 112, 117, T 53, 73
Huriq, village, 117
Hurum, darya-yi, T 49
Husayni sect, 64
Husayn b. Ali, Imam, 110, 170, T 16, 27, 28, 169, 200, 201
Husayn, Haji Babu, s. of S.
Husayn, Sakh, 128, 146, T 180
Husayn-Ali, T 142, 143
Huwayza, 91
hyperbolists, ghulat, 1
Ibadat, T 61
Ibis, 46, 107
Ibn Muljam-i la'in, T 27
Ibrahim Adham (dhbat-i Dara-Shikoh), 171, T 195
Ibrahim Khalil, T 189
Ibrahim, Shah, Sayyid, Dastgir, Mir-i ujaq, 6, T 163, 164, 171, 172, T 180, 187, 199
Ibrahim, jam-i Shah, T 190, 196, 199
Ibrahim, ulya-i Shah, T 190
Ibrahim Shah Mirza Karyal (?), T 182
iconoclastic movements, 49
I'd, cf. Festival, T 112, 117, 172
I'd, mah-i, T 113
I'd-i haqiqat, 93, 141, T 118, 172
I'd-i haqiqat, presents on, 141
I'd-i Nawruz, T 194
I'd-i Qurban, 67, 92
I'd-i Shahi, 39, 135
Ishak-yi rox, T 27, 28
Ihsan, muklu, benefit to humanity, 106, T 14, 15
Ihsan, Pers. Shi'te poet, 108
Ihtissam-nishin, T 29
Ijaz-i batin, T 69
Ili wa abba', T 50
Ili Dilfan, T 123
Ili Mirza Aman, T 35
Ilat-i Shabri', T 99
Ilich under Mongols, 15
Imam-'Ali (-Quli?) Khan, 176, T 205
Imam is born as an ordinary man, 52
Imam, Divinity of, 71
Imam, earth cannot remain without him, 71
Imam, extension of, -hujaat, Niz. Isma'ili, 73
Imam-i munbi'in ("Ali"), T 27
Imam, oath of allegiance to, 92
Imam, Shi'te ideal of, 36
Imam-Quli Khan, s. of Atish, T 11, 146, 198, T 131, 137
Iman of Alamut, 69
Imams, Ismaili, 19, 21, 22
Imams, Ismaili, AH contact with, 55
Imams, Ismaili, lists of their names in darwish risals, treated as a Sufic affiliation, 22
Imams, Ismaili, representatives of, 19
Imams, Nizaris, lived in the guise of darwish shaykhs, 21
Imams, Nizari, settled in Anjou, 19, 22
Imams, Isma'ilis, twelve, 115
Imamat, continuity in Isma'ilism, 71
Imamat, spirit of adoptionism in the theory of, 52
Imamshah (of Gujur), 20
imitation, blind, in following rules of Haqiqat, condemned, 156
Imran ("Amrani") language, T 102
Imtihan-i munajjisman, T 11
Incarnation of Deity is above procreation, 52
incarnation, doctrine of, 52, 71
incarnations, names of, all cannot be remembered, 8
incarnations, seven, symbolic number, 8
Incarnation, testing genuineness of, Qabaisa pilgrims, 93
India, 15, 20, 67, 164, 169, 171
India, cases of human sacrifice common even now, 88
India, darwish travels in, 67, 164
informant, reporter, trusted, 8
mukhabir-i amin, Banyamin, 105
initiation ceremony, 4, 88-92, 157
initiation, darwish, branding on arm, 66, 67
initiation, darwish, piyalas of, 67
initiation, Mithraic, 67
Injiljan, 70
Injil, daw'-i, T 17
Injil, Gospels, 108
"Instruction of 12 Apostles" (Didache), 182
Invincible sun, Sol invictus, rel.
of, Mithraism, 25
INDEX

IQUR brotherhood, group of four, 85, 86, T 129; of three, 159, 168.

IQUR confraternities, 40, 179, 181.

IQUR sister, 129, 170, 180.

IQUR, covenant, with Adam, T 28, 57.

IQUR with Banyamin, T 53, 56.

IQUR ba jam-i marden, 47.

IQUR-i khidmat, T 24.

IQUR ba Pirazi, T 54.

IQUR-i piru wa fals, T 107, cf.

pirla muridi.

Iran, 175, T 205.

"Iran," meaning in India, 12, 172.

Iranian religion, ancient, 35, 35.

Irenaeus of Lyon, "Adversus Haereses," 182.

‘Isa, Jesus, star in his forehead, T 52.

‘Isa, servant, demands pension, 142.


Ishafan, 16, 125, T 77.

Ishand, month of, 39.

Ishag, Sultan, 9, 120, 122, T 73, 87, 88, 195, 196, 197.

Ishag, Shykh of Pardiw, 32, 130, see Sultan Shykh.

Ishara, Shykh, Shafii, Banyamin, etc., magic formula, T 21, 72.

Isher, dhow, T 122, T 181.

Isher, Darud, 104.

Isher, Sultan, i-Tulum, T 14, 113.

‘Isa Beibeli, Shykh, father of S. Sahak, story of, 6, 70, 72, 120, 122, T 58, 60; his son, 56, 127.


Islam, Christ, elements in, 49.

Islam, Sunna, elements in, 68.

ism-i Asaqiat, 124, T 194.

fariqat, 124, T 193-194.

ism-i Khalqi, seals with, 165.
Jamiu'd-din, 184, T 183
Juma-e-nama, 175
Jamasp-nama, 172
Jami'u't-tawwirik, 14
Jahmed Khan, 148, T 134, 135, 173, 175
Janu Mas (?), man of Atish Bek, T 205
Jani (Salman-Banyamin), 163-165, T 177, 178, 182-185, 201
Joni Haqqaqi (Dowd?), T 181
Joni, Khattam-i Chiltani-i Nur, T 183
Joni-zaqan (Banyamin?), 164, T 182
Jasad, shahar, "angels", 146-148, 161, 162, T 94
Jasad, sh., 'aziz, T 58
Jashn-i Haqqi, 140, T 115
Jashn-i Shahi, 93, 138, T 110
Jashni, volunteer for being immolated, 145, T 128
Jaat, for jaash, 129
Jawhar, jawahir, substance, 167, T 4, 8, 9, 11, 190
Jawz (pursuit), T 204
Jawz, nut (nutcheg), 83
Jawz-i 'aqd kardan-i zan, T 153
Jawz 'awad-i sar, T 166
Jawz az Banyamin, T 188
Jawz bi-yawwarad (in initiation), T 158, 159
Jawz, created from the sweat of Khawwander, 168
Jawz wa daw shahi, T 188
Jawz az jib awurd, T 165
Jawz, qura 'nur az jabin-i Khawwander, T 6
Jawz-i sar-i Pashah baksh namad, T 165
Jawz-i Shahi, 92, 124, 129, 158, T 75, 80, 84, 166
Jawz shikastan, 5, 96, T 187
Jawz shikastan dar hani-i 'aqd bastan-i zan, T 154
Jawzi-i shukrana, declaration over, 83, 102, 146, T 8, 131
Jawzi-i shukrana, distributed by khaliqa in absence of Sayyid, 153, T 313
Jawzi-yari dar 'arasi, T 158
Jayhan, 170, T 194
Jerusalem, 61
Jesus, dogma of miraculous conception, 53
Jesus, formed of dust as Adam, 52-53
Jesus, seen in Shah Khshin's suite, 116: has a star on forehead, 116
Jewish colonies in Arabia, 49
Jews, books of, 156
Jews of Kashan, 170
Jilaw Khan, 164, T 182
John of Otsun (Vili c.), 54
Jordan, riv., 49
Joseph, St., 70
Judgment Day, 38, 40, 74, 82, 95, 103, 128, 129, 132
Junayd (Hindu), 198
Justice, to fill the world, 177
Justice, T 53
Juyanda'i maqom-i hagqat, T 26
Juzwi-i khudmat-i yuristan, T 168
Ka, kaku, kaka, with names of some pirs, friar?, T 96
Ka 'Arab, see Ka 'Arab.
Ko Pira, see Kaka Pira.
Ko, symbol of the highest sanctity, 76, 128, 158, T 18, 60, 62, 81, 82, 147, 167
Ko 'ba', symbol of the highest sanctity, 76, 128, 158, T 18, 60, 62, 81, 82, 147, 167
Ko 'ba' batin, jam-i hagqat, T 149, T 147
Ko 'ba' hagqat, jam, 76, 158, T 167
Ko 'ba' qurar, T 167
Kabul-sawar, expl., 126
Kabur, 8, 16
Kaf, foam, 43, 104, T 8, 9
Kafist, 8
Kaka Ahmad, Shah, 111, 112, T 38, 39
Kaka 'Arab, 133-137, T 96, 98, 101, 103, 107, 108, 110, 111, 115
Kaka Dar, T 188
Kaka Pira, 133, 136, 137, 140, 141, T 95, 98, 101, 104, 107-111, 114-118
Kaka Rahmon, 133, 140, T 96, 99, 101, 112, 115
Kaka Rida, Reds, 13, 56, 111, 113, 114, 116, 118, T 35-38, 42, 49, 197
Kakas of Gujarat in Satpanth, 20
Kala, saying, in verse, passim
Kalardasht, Sayyid, of, 40, 135
Kalb-i diwans, T 102
Kali, goddess, human sacrifice to, 88
Kalika (Russian) and galdars, 60-61
Kalla-tarsh (of Forty), T 185, 202
Kulu Qalandar (of Forty), T 185, 202
Kama'i, tribe, 174, T 203
Kamar-basta, hifdah, niyaz-i, T 190
Kamar bastan, Sufic investment, T 87, 89, 91, 92
Kam-i Bahali, by Hasan b. 'Ali Tabarsi, 15
Kamil Hussein, M., 17
Kaner-i jam, 140, T 115
camar-i batin, T 37
Kand wa bard, T 123; kord wa sang, T 126
Kardor, good actions, 86, T 146
Kargah, in, T 10
Karguzar, T 10
Kari Khan, K., 29
Karin Khan, Zand, 10
Karim, T 25, 125
Korkhama'i Haqq (dunya), T 161
Korkhama'i Khwaja, T 99
Korkhama'i, wakil-i (First claims to be), T 53, 75
Korkhama'i, world, 119, 124, 125
Korkhara, bishop of, Archelaus, 52
Koryal, Myen, T 182
Kosi, most (brought to Incarnation), T 26, 27, 51, 53, 80, 81, 123, 155
Kosi, most, qabza'i att-i maqar is placed in T 53
Kashan, Jews of, T 171, T 195
Kashkuli-li'Ali (of Forty), T 185, 202
Kaygusuz Tekin, Bektashi, in Cairo, 64
Kazi Run, 108
Kermanshah, 8, 29, 117, 144
"Key" abbreviation for the book, F. Conybeare, "The Key of Truth", 1898.
"Key", pages cut in 46, 50, 51
Khach-parast, worshipper of cross, Christian (Salman), 108, T 17
Khahim, in jam, 78, 79, 140, T 74, 147, 148
Khadiruul-fuqara, 109, 165, T 24, 184
Khak-nishan, T 54
Khachers (or Haydar) dar wishkars, 1, 22, 27, 62, 63, 67, 85, 182, 181, T 187, 202
Khacur, political organisation in India, 1
Khalfi, acts instead of Sayyid, 79, 92, T 153, 187
Khalfi, gets the skin of sacrificial animal, 80, 81, 153, T 153
Khalfi, in jam, duties of, 78-80, 90, 92, 123, T 147, 148, 153
AH-19
INDEX

refugees from Persia, under
Mongols, 17, 18
religion of AH named after an
associate of Incarnation, 13
repentance, tawba, 94
Resurrection, 74, 92, 136, 158;
Day of, 84, 106; Great, 70;
Yawmu’l-haššr, 46
resuscitation of sacrificed animals,
quarrell of, 89
rīsāl-i Dawūd, 126, T 21, 72, 79,
188
Rida, Imam, Ithnā-‘ashāri, 163,
T 28, 180, 198
Rida, Reda, Kaka, see Kaka
Rida.
Riđā’, 13, T 36
Ridwan, T 99
Rīsāla, in, T 28
Riśāla of Gulshīr Sabżawārī, 41,
45, 167, T 187; of Nur ‘Ali of
Nishapūr, T 183, 196; of
Parwīz ‘Ali, 166, T 185
rīsālas of darwīshes, 22, 23, 27,
63-64
rūsālat, proph. mission, and
Adoptionist theories, 52
rīsh-i ‘l faq, T 93, 119
ritual, sex, of haqiqat, 158
Rizbūd, gorge of, 13, T 42
Rithīsh (Arī, Dshī), 36, 38, 43, 65
Rufs’ī, 61
rūš, 101, 104, 107, T 9, 14, 16, 17
råk-i haywāni, T 4
Rum, 108, 111, 169, 171, T 17, 33,
37, 124, 125, 132, 193, 195; Mhd
Bek goes to, 144; people of. 166
Rum-īshk, T 37
rumāz-i fāqi, T 183
Rūs, 33, 31
Rubam-Pers. hero, 107; Guran,
temptation of, 117; Sayyid of
Gahwarā, 7, 25
Rustam ‘Ali (of Forty), T 185,
202
Rustam Mur, niyaz-i, T 190
rvaṭa, amīt, 40
rız-i ekhrāj, Akhirat, T 83, 84;
awwal, T 2, 28, 54, 152; azāli,
T 128; Dīwān-i Sab‘ū’s-zaman,
T 146; ʻAsāb, T 126; khidmat,
149; Qiyamāt, T 186; saranjam
ki sirr-i maqṣu ast, 109, T 28
rūzā, T 109-112, 118, 117, 198
rūzā-i Padshahī, T 198
Sabr-i ‘Ali, T 187
Sahs-‘Ali (of Forty), T 185
Sahs-push, Mawla, T 23
Sacraments, Paulician, 55
Sacrifice (cf. qurban), addition to
meat, niyaz, 86; animals allowed
for sacrifice, 84-85, T 139;
blood sacr. in anc. Iran and
Islam, 81-82; day of, Friday,
159; descriptions of, T 7, 9,
25, 51, 73, 102, 119, 133; first,
83, 158, T 6; human, 87-88;
human, in India, 88; human,
voltumes to, 145; from mal-i
Dawūd and mal-i jam, 153;
purpose of, 82-83; skin goes to khalifa, 89; at welcome parties
sacrificeable animals, 84-85.
T 159
sacrificial meal to be treated as
sacrament, 84, 159
sad dinar, mal-i Dawūd, 80, 81,
T 151, 199
sada-yi Musta‘fū-‘y Dawudan,
T 83, 184
Sadiq Khan, 176, T 205
Safavid dynasty, 24; period, 125
Safaūwās, 111, 130, 170
Safi, shaykh, Safiyyū’d-dīn
Ardaḫī, 10, 24, 130, 131, 170.
T 87-92, 195
safid bazān, T 43
Sahābkor, Sahāb-karam, passim
INDEX

immolated, 145, T 126
Sahāk b. Mhd, 170
sama’, Sunī, 95
Sang-i Dīnwar, 122, 131,
T 73, 92, 93, 118, 161
“sannār”, see ‘i d-dīnār.
sar dādan, 4, 27, 87, 89, T 128,
165, 167
sar supurda, 4, 6, 89, 160,
T 169, 188
sar-i jam, 78, 115, 116, 169
sar-i jawz, iqorū, 83, 92, 146,
T 6, 131
sar-i moh, jam, T 167
sar-i Shart-i Bānīyūn, T 109
sar-u qadam sakhtā, T 126
Sarūnān, Bobo Yudgūr, 118
Saranjam, 24, 26, 109, T 26;
ruz-i, T 26; rā- gurar fardwār,
T 26
Sar-chashmā’i Sultan, T 95, 96
sar-i jam, T 113
Sar-haqla’i Haft tan, S. Mhd
Gawr-sawār, q.v., T 199
Sarkhūsh Bek, Mfr, T 14, 146,
176, T 131, 145, 205
Sarmad (Sarmāt?) T 195
Sarmāst, 164, 170, T 182, 194
Sasanians, 183
Satan, alluded too, 45, 169; name
tabooed, 47
Satanaēl, elder son of God, 47
Satana’ī, 47
Satānpān, 17, 74; re-birth theory,
74
Sawar-i Dulehā, T 178
sayyid, ali? 56
Sayyid, woj, 4, 5, 6, 7, 55, 56,
79, 89-92, 153, 160, T 79, 140,
153, 169; erring in his
duties is not genuine, 160; must
be man, not woman, 153, 160,
T 168, 169; payment to, fayd, 153;
replaced by khalifa, 153
Sayyid-zoda, son of S. Sahāk, 6,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42, 104, 105</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102, 115, 123</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195, 196</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84, 109, 166</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>172-175</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182, 183</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>166</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>262</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132, 133, T 94, 97, 98</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>176, 205</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>108</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>158</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AH-31**
SOME MISPRINTS.

P. 97, line 6 from bottom. Insert a bracket after "beard".
P. 103, line 2 fr. bottom. For ayr- read ayr-ä.
P. 109, line 13 fr. bottom. For ýän read ýän.
P. 158, line 2 fr. bottom. Add 1 in the word "mediaeval".